

TEI P5 Customization and Encoding Guidelines - Bodleian Library UNFINISHED DRAFT - IN PROGRESS

Table of contents

1. [Encoding guidelines](#)
 - 1.1. [Introduction](#)
 - 1.2. [Acknowledgements](#)
 - 1.3. [General principles](#)
 - 1.3.1. [Foreign Phrases and Words](#)
 - 1.3.2. [References to Locations within a Manuscript](#)
 - 1.3.3. [Personal Names](#)
 - 1.3.4. [Corporate / Organization Names](#)
 - 1.3.5. [Placenames](#)
 - 1.3.6. [Hyperlinks](#)
 - 1.3.7. [Formatting](#)
 - 1.3.8. [Attribute values](#)
 - 1.3.9. [Transcription](#)
 - 1.3.10. [Quotations from the manuscript](#)
 - 1.3.11. [References to other manuscripts](#)
 - 1.4. [The TEI Header](#)
 - 1.4.1. [File Description](#)
 - 1.4.1.1. [Title Statement](#)
 - 1.4.1.2. [Responsibility](#)
 - 1.4.1.3. [Publication Statement](#)
 - 1.4.2. [Revision Description](#)
 - 1.5. [Subject Classifications](#)
 - 1.6. [Manuscript Description](#)
 - 1.6.1. [The Manuscript Identifier](#)
 - 1.6.2. [The Heading](#)
 - 1.6.3. [Intellectual Content](#)
 - 1.6.3.1. [Summary \(optional\)](#)
 - 1.6.3.2. [Language\(s\) of the manuscript as a whole \(optional\)](#)
 - 1.6.3.3. [Manuscript Item](#)
 - 1.6.3.3.1. [What is a manuscript item?](#)
 - 1.6.3.3.3. [Texts with gloss and commentary](#)
 - 1.6.3.3.4. [Relating manuscript items to quires](#)
 - 1.6.3.3.5. [General notes on the content](#)
 - 1.6.3.3.6. [Added texts](#)
 - 1.6.3.3.7. [Locus](#)
 - 1.6.3.3.8. [Author](#)
 - 1.6.3.3.8.1. [Pseudonymous, multiple, uncertain, disputed and attributed authorship](#)
 - 1.6.3.3.9. [Editor / translator / etc.](#)
 - 1.6.3.3.10. [Title](#)
 - 1.6.3.3.11. [Rubrics, incipits, explicits, final rubrics, and colophons.](#)
 - 1.6.3.3.11.1. [Complex incipits](#)
 - 1.6.3.3.12. [Note, bibliography and additional information](#)
 - 1.6.4. [Physical description](#)
 - 1.6.4.1. [secundo folio](#)
 - 1.6.4.2. [Object Description](#)
 - 1.6.4.2.1. [Support Description](#)
 - 1.6.4.2.1.1. [Support](#)
 - 1.6.4.2.1.2. [Extent](#)
 - 1.6.4.2.1.3. [Leaf dimensions](#)
 - 1.6.4.2.2. [Foliation](#)
 - 1.6.4.2.3. [Collation](#)
 - 1.6.4.2.4. [Condition](#)

- 1.6.4.3. Layout Description
- 1.6.4.4. Description of Hands
- 1.6.4.5. Musical Notation
- 1.6.4.6. Description of the Decoration
- 1.6.4.7. Additions
- 1.6.4.8. Binding Description
- 1.6.4.9. Seals
- 1.6.4.10. Accompanying material
- 1.6.5. History
 - 1.6.5.1. Origin
 - 1.6.5.1.1. origDate
 - 1.6.5.1.2. origPlace
 - 1.6.5.2. Provenance
 - 1.6.5.3. Acquisition
- 1.6.6. Additional
 - 1.6.6.1. Record source and history
 - 1.6.6.2. Availability
 - 1.6.6.3. Custodial History
 - 1.6.6.4. Surrogates
 - 1.6.6.5. Bibliography
- 1.6.7. Multi-part, composite and similar units.
 - 1.6.7.1. Endleaf
 - 1.6.7.2. Manuscripts with replacement leaves
- 1.6.8. Appendix of examples
 - 1.6.8.1. Book of Hours
 - 1.6.8.2. Bible

2. Schema

2.1. Elements

- 2.1.1. <TEI>
- 2.1.2. <abbr>
- 2.1.3. <accMat>
- 2.1.4. <acquisition>
- 2.1.5. <add>
- 2.1.6. <addName>
- 2.1.7. <additional>
- 2.1.8. <additions>
- 2.1.9. <addrLine>
- 2.1.10. <address>
- 2.1.11. <adminInfo>
- 2.1.12. <altIdentifier>
- 2.1.13. <am>
- 2.1.14. <author>
- 2.1.15. <authority>
- 2.1.16. <availability>
- 2.1.17. <bibl>
- 2.1.18. <biblScope>
- 2.1.19. <binding>
- 2.1.20. <bindingDesc>
- 2.1.21. <body>
- 2.1.22. <catDesc>
- 2.1.23. <catchwords>
- 2.1.24. <category>
- 2.1.25. <change>
- 2.1.26. <choice>
- 2.1.27. <cit>
- 2.1.28. <citedRange>
- 2.1.29. <classDecl>
- 2.1.30. <collation>
- 2.1.31. <collection>
- 2.1.32. <colophon>
- 2.1.33. <condition>
- 2.1.34. <corr>
- 2.1.35. <countermark>
- 2.1.36. <country>

2.1.37. `<custEvent>`
2.1.38. `<custodialHist>`
2.1.39. `<damage>`
2.1.40. `<date>`
2.1.41. `<decoDesc>`
2.1.42. `<decoNote>`
2.1.43. ``
2.1.44. `<depth>`
2.1.45. `<desc>`
2.1.46. `<dim>`
2.1.47. `<dimensions>`
2.1.48. `<distributor>`
2.1.49. `<district>`
2.1.50. `<div>`
2.1.51. `<edition>`
2.1.52. `<editionStmt>`
2.1.53. `<editor>`
2.1.54. `<email>`
2.1.55. `<encodingDesc>`
2.1.56. `<ex>`
2.1.57. `<expan>`
2.1.58. `<explicit>`
2.1.59. `<extent>`
2.1.60. `<facsimile>`
2.1.61. `<fallback>`
2.1.62. `<figDesc>`
2.1.63. `<figure>`
2.1.64. `<fileDesc>`
2.1.65. `<filiation>`
2.1.66. `<finalRubric>`
2.1.67. `<foliation>`
2.1.68. `<foreign>`
2.1.69. `<forename>`
2.1.70. `<formula>`
2.1.71. `<funder>`
2.1.72. `<fw>`
2.1.73. `<gap>`
2.1.74. `<geo>`
2.1.75. `<geogFeat>`
2.1.76. `<geogName>`
2.1.77. `<graphic>`
2.1.78. `<handDesc>`
2.1.79. `<handNote>`
2.1.80. `<head>`
2.1.81. `<height>`
2.1.82. `<heraldry>`
2.1.83. `<hi>`
2.1.84. `<history>`
2.1.85. `<idno>`
2.1.86. `<incipit>`
2.1.87. `<include>`
2.1.88. `<institution>`
2.1.89. `<item>`
2.1.90. `<keywords>`
2.1.91. `</>`
2.1.92. `<label>`
2.1.93. `<layout>`
2.1.94. `<layoutDesc>`
2.1.95. `<lb>`
2.1.96. `<lg>`
2.1.97. `<licence>`
2.1.98. `<list>`
2.1.99. `<listBibl>`
2.1.100. `<locus>`

2.1.101. <locusGrp>
2.1.102. <material>
2.1.103. <measure>
2.1.104. <msContents>
2.1.105. <msDesc>
2.1.106. <msFrag>
2.1.107. <msIdentifier>
2.1.108. <msItem>
2.1.109. <msItemStruct>
2.1.110. <msName>
2.1.111. <msPart>
2.1.112. <musicNotation>
2.1.113. <name>
2.1.114. <note>
2.1.115. <num>
2.1.116. <objectDesc>
2.1.117. <objectType>
2.1.118. <orgName>
2.1.119. <orig>
2.1.120. <origDate>
2.1.121. <origPlace>
2.1.122. <origin>
2.1.123. <p>
2.1.124. <pb>
2.1.125. <persName>
2.1.126. <physDesc>
2.1.127. <placeName>
2.1.128. <postCode>
2.1.129. <principal>
2.1.130. <profileDesc>
2.1.131. <projectDesc>
2.1.132. <provenance>
2.1.133. <pubPlace>
2.1.134. <publicationStmt>
2.1.135. <publisher>
2.1.136. <q>
2.1.137. <quote>
2.1.138. <recordHist>
2.1.139. <ref>
2.1.140. <reg>
2.1.141. <region>
2.1.142. <relatedItem>
2.1.143. <repository>
2.1.144. <resp>
2.1.145. <respStmt>
2.1.146. <revisionDesc>
2.1.147. <rubric>
2.1.148. <scriptDesc>
2.1.149. <scriptNote>
2.1.150. <seal>
2.1.151. <sealDesc>
2.1.152. <secFol>
2.1.153. <seg>
2.1.154. <series>
2.1.155. <settlement>
2.1.156. <sic>
2.1.157. <signatures>
2.1.158. <source>
2.1.159. <sourceDesc>
2.1.160. <sponsor>
2.1.161. <stamp>
2.1.162. <street>
2.1.163. <subst>
2.1.164. <summary>

- 2.1.165. <supplied>
- 2.1.166. <support>
- 2.1.167. <supportDesc>
- 2.1.168. <surface>
- 2.1.169. <surfaceGrp>
- 2.1.170. <surname>
- 2.1.171. <surrogates>
- 2.1.172. <taxonomy>
- 2.1.173. <teiHeader>
- 2.1.174. <term>
- 2.1.175. <text>
- 2.1.176. <textClass>
- 2.1.177. <textLang>
- 2.1.178. <title>
- 2.1.179. <titleStmt>
- 2.1.180. <typeDesc>
- 2.1.181. <typeNote>
- 2.1.182. <unclear>
- 2.1.183. <watermark>
- 2.1.184. <width>
- 2.1.185. <zone>

2.2. Model classes

- 2.2.1. model.addrPart
- 2.2.2. model.addressLike
- 2.2.3. model.availabilityPart
- 2.2.4. model.biblLike
- 2.2.5. model.biblPart
- 2.2.6. model.choicePart
- 2.2.7. model.common
- 2.2.8. model.dateLike
- 2.2.9. model.descLike
- 2.2.10. model.dimLike
- 2.2.11. model.divBottom
- 2.2.12. model.divLike
- 2.2.13. model.divPart
- 2.2.14. model.divTop
- 2.2.15. model.divTopPart
- 2.2.16. model.emphLike
- 2.2.17. model.encodingDescPart
- 2.2.18. model.global
- 2.2.19. model.global.edit
- 2.2.20. model.graphicLike
- 2.2.21. model.headLike
- 2.2.22. model.hiLike
- 2.2.23. model.highlighted
- 2.2.24. model.imprintPart
- 2.2.25. model.inter
- 2.2.26. model.ILike
- 2.2.27. model.labelLike
- 2.2.28. model.limitedPhrase
- 2.2.29. model.linePart
- 2.2.30. model.listLike
- 2.2.31. model.measureLike
- 2.2.32. model.milestoneLike
- 2.2.33. model.msItemPart
- 2.2.34. model.msQuoteLike
- 2.2.35. model.nameLike
- 2.2.36. model.nameLike.agent
- 2.2.37. model.noteLike
- 2.2.38. model.offsetLike
- 2.2.39. model.pLike
- 2.2.40. model.pPart.data
- 2.2.41. model.pPart.edit
- 2.2.42. model.pPart.editorial

- 2.2.43. [model.pPart.msdesc](#)
- 2.2.44. [model.pPart.transcriptional](#)
- 2.2.45. [model.persNamePart](#)
- 2.2.46. [model.phrase](#)
- 2.2.47. [model.physDescPart](#)
- 2.2.48. [model.placeNamePart](#)
- 2.2.49. [model.placeStateLike](#)
- 2.2.50. [model.profileDescPart](#)
- 2.2.51. [model.ptrLike](#)
- 2.2.52. [model.publicationStmtPart.agency](#)
- 2.2.53. [model.publicationStmtPart.detail](#)
- 2.2.54. [model.qLike](#)
- 2.2.55. [model.quoteLike](#)
- 2.2.56. [model.resourceLike](#)
- 2.2.57. [model.respLike](#)
- 2.2.58. [model.segLike](#)
- 2.2.59. [model.teiHeaderPart](#)
- 2.2.60. [model.titlepagePart](#)

2.3. Attribute classes

- 2.3.1. [att.ascribed](#)
- 2.3.2. [att.ascribed.directed](#)
- 2.3.3. [att.breaking](#)
- 2.3.4. [att.cReferencing](#)
- 2.3.5. [att.canonical](#)
- 2.3.6. [att.citing](#)
- 2.3.7. [att.coordinated](#)
- 2.3.8. [att.damaged](#)
- 2.3.9. [att.datable](#)
- 2.3.10. [att.datable.custom](#)
- 2.3.11. [att.datable.iso](#)
- 2.3.12. [att.datable.w3c](#)
- 2.3.13. [att.datcat](#)
- 2.3.14. [att.declarable](#)
- 2.3.15. [att.declaring](#)
- 2.3.16. [att.dimensions](#)
- 2.3.17. [att.divLike](#)
- 2.3.18. [att.docStatus](#)
- 2.3.19. [att.editLike](#)
- 2.3.20. [att.edition](#)
- 2.3.21. [att.fragmentable](#)
- 2.3.22. [att.global](#)
- 2.3.23. [att.global.change](#)
- 2.3.24. [att.global.facs](#)
- 2.3.25. [att.global.linking](#)
- 2.3.26. [att.global.rendition](#)
- 2.3.27. [att.global.responsibility](#)
- 2.3.28. [att.global.source](#)
- 2.3.29. [att.handFeatures](#)
- 2.3.30. [att.internetMedia](#)
- 2.3.31. [att.measurement](#)
- 2.3.32. [att.media](#)
- 2.3.33. [att.msClass](#)
- 2.3.34. [att.msExcerpt](#)
- 2.3.35. [att.naming](#)
- 2.3.36. [att.notated](#)
- 2.3.37. [att.personal](#)
- 2.3.38. [att.placement](#)
- 2.3.39. [att.pointing](#)
- 2.3.40. [att.ranging](#)
- 2.3.41. [att.resourced](#)
- 2.3.42. [att.segLike](#)
- 2.3.43. [att.sortable](#)
- 2.3.44. [att.spanning](#)
- 2.3.45. [att.timed](#)

- 2.3.46. [att.transcriptional](#)
- 2.3.47. [att.translatable](#)
- 2.3.48. [att.typed](#)
- 2.3.49. [att.written](#)
- 2.4. [Macros](#)
 - 2.4.1. [macro.limitedContent](#)
 - 2.4.2. [macro.paraContent](#)
 - 2.4.3. [macro.phraseSeq](#)
 - 2.4.4. [macro.phraseSeq.limited](#)
 - 2.4.5. [macro.specialPara](#)
 - 2.4.6. [macro.xtext](#)
- 2.5. [Datatypes](#)
 - 2.5.1. [teidata.certainty](#)
 - 2.5.2. [teidata.count](#)
 - 2.5.3. [teidata.duration.iso](#)
 - 2.5.4. [teidata.duration.w3c](#)
 - 2.5.5. [teidata.enumerated](#)
 - 2.5.6. [teidata.language](#)
 - 2.5.7. [teidata.name](#)
 - 2.5.8. [teidata.numeric](#)
 - 2.5.9. [teidata.outputMeasurement](#)
 - 2.5.10. [teidata.pattern](#)
 - 2.5.11. [teidata.point](#)
 - 2.5.12. [teidata.pointer](#)
 - 2.5.13. [teidata.probCert](#)
 - 2.5.14. [teidata.probability](#)
 - 2.5.15. [teidata.replacement](#)
 - 2.5.16. [teidata.temporal.iso](#)
 - 2.5.17. [teidata.temporal.w3c](#)
 - 2.5.18. [teidata.text](#)
 - 2.5.19. [teidata.truthValue](#)
 - 2.5.20. [teidata.version](#)
 - 2.5.21. [teidata.versionNumber](#)
 - 2.5.22. [teidata.word](#)
 - 2.5.23. [teidata.xTruthValue](#)
 - 2.5.24. [teidata.xpath](#)

1. Encoding guidelines

1.1. Introduction

TEI P5 ODD Customization for *Manuscripts in Oxford Libraries and the Fihrist and Senmai union catalogues*

1.2. Acknowledgements

These draft guidelines are currently based on two main sources - the encoding guidelines for the Fihrist project [[pdf](#)], and encoding guidelines for medieval manuscripts jointly created by Cambridge University Library (James Freeman, with Suzanne Paul) and the Bodleian Library (Matthew Holford) with contributions by Andrew Dunning (formerly British Library). The medieval guidelines in turn draw in places on the guidelines created by Patrick Granholm and Eva Nyström for [manuscripta.se](#).

1.3. General principles

1.3.1. Foreign Phrases and Words

Phrases or words in other languages than English may be tagged by adding the @xml:lang attribute to the element enclosing the text, or where no other element is available with a [`<foreign>`](#) element and a @xml:lang attribute. By default this text displays in italic when rendered in the online catalogue.

1.3.2. References to Locations within a Manuscript

References to a specific location or range within a manuscripts should be given in a `<locus>` element. The `@from` and `@to` attributes are optional but recommended, as they enable links to images to be generated and allow calculation of the length of manuscript items.

If `@from` and `@to` attributes are used to refer to a specific folio or page they should be used with identical values. The foliation scheme should be specified in the `@scheme` attribute with the value folios or pages (the default is assumed to be folios. Lines and/or columns may be specified, e.g. fol. 1r, col. a, line 10 to fol. 2v, column b, line 5).

If reference to columns of text is necessary, use lower-case letters: a, b, c, etc. The lettering should begin with the first column on the left, and move across to the right. The sequence should begin afresh on each page (i.e. the letters do not run concurrently from recto to verso, or across an opening).

To identify columns / lines in the `@from` or `@to` attributes, use (for example):

```
<locus from="1ra10" to="2vb5">(fols. 1ra, line 10 – 2vb, line 5)</locus>
```

Text in margins:

```
<locus from="1r" to="10r">(fols. 1r-10r, margins)</locus>
```

For texts scattered over more than one location in the manuscript the `<locusGrp>` element should be used.

```
<locusGrp>
<locus from="356rb" to="356vb">Fols 356<hi rend="superscript">rb-vb</hi>,</locus>
<locus from="374ra" to="374rb">374<hi rend="superscript">rab</hi>
</locus>
</locusGrp>
```

1.3.3. Personal Names

Persons, if not in an `<author>` or `<editor>` element, should be tagged using the `<persName>` element. For indexing to function correctly this MUST be linked to the persons authority file using the `@key` attribute. The role of the person referred to should be indicated using the `@role` attribute. Values should correspond to the Library of Congress relator term list (<http://www.loc.gov/marc//relators/relaterm.html>). The most commonly occurring roles are: "aut" (author), "scr" (scribe), "art" (artist; NB this is preferred to illustrator), "fmo" (former owner), "sgn" (signer), "pat" (patron). If necessary, multiple roles can be separated with whitespace.

```
Common-place book of
<persName key="person_697" role="scr fmo">John
Curteys</persName> of Winchester College and New College, Oxford
```

To record alternative names for a person in such contexts, use nested `<persName>` elements, for example:

```
<persName key="person_f6124" role="scr">
  <persName xml:lang="fa-Latn-x-lc">'Abd al-Rahmān</persName>
  (<persName xml:lang="fa">عبد الرحمن</persName>
  </persName>
```

Use "fmo" where there is evidence that a person owned an item. Use "sgn" where the person is only associated with the item by a signature or an inscription which does not necessarily imply ownership. "dnr" (donor) may be used where the person gave the manuscript to an institution but evidence of ownership before the gift is lacking; i.e. to describe manuscripts apparently bought or made with the

intention of being directly presented, or manuscripts may have been purchased with money given by a donor rather than directly presented.

1.3.4. Corporate / Organization Names

Corporate entities should be tagged using the `<orgName>` element. For indexing to function correctly this MUST be linked to the persons authority file using the `@key` attribute. The role of the organization referred to should be indicated using the `@role` attribute. Values should correspond to the Library of Congress relator term list (<http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relaterm.html>). Separate multiple roles with whitespace.

```
<orgName key="org_148998848" role="fmo">Würzburg, Domstift St Kilian</orgName>,  
12th-century ex libris, fol. 1r, and 15th-century shelfmark, fol.  
2r.
```

1.3.5. Placenames

In sections relating to manuscript contents, physical description and provenance, placenames should be tagged using the `<placeName>`. For indexing to function correctly this MUST be linked to the places authority file using the `@key` attribute.

```
<placeName key="place_1234">Bologna</placeName>
```

`<placeName>` contains an absolute or relative place name.

`@key` provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) [att.canonical] being named, using a coded value of some kind.

In the `<origPlace>` element, placenames should be tagged using (as appropriate) `<country>`, `<region>` and `<settlement>`. Again, for indexing to function correctly these MUST be linked to the places authority file using the `@key` attribute. See under `origPlace`.

To accommodate geodata in legacy data, or for use by other systems, `<geo>` elements are permitted. But they are not displayed in catalogue web sites. For example, from the International Dunhuang Project:

```
<origPlace>DHMG. (Dunhuang Mogao) DHMG.17. <geo n="min">94.803888888889198  
40.036388888888658</geo>  
<geo n="max">95.9375 40.048333333333201</geo>  

```

In other cataloguing projects geodata should be given in the places authority file.

1.3.6. Hyperlinks

Hyperlinks may be created using the `<ref>` element with the URL as the value of the `@target` attribute. This can be used to provide links to relevant electronic resources.

```
<ref target="http://www.dimev.net/record.php?recID=4633">DIMEV  
4633</ref>
```

1.3.7. Formatting

In general, where possible, formatting should be carried out using semantic markup rather than using the `<hi>` element.

However, where use of the `<hi>` element is unavoidable, it should be used with the following values on `@rend`:

- superscript
- subscript
- underline

Multiple values may be separated by whitespace.

If correct formatting is not possible using these values, raise an issue on GitHub to add further values.

1.3.8. Attribute values

Attribute values forming more than one word in natural language should be given in camelCase.

1.3.9. Transcription

Transcriptions from the manuscript in the `<rubric>`, `<incipit>`, `<explicit>`, etc. elements, or in the provenance section, should be made diplomatically. Expand standard abbreviations silently. If the abbreviation can be expanded with some but not complete confidence, enclose the expansion in the `<ex>` element. Denote uncertain or ambiguous abbreviations with the character ' [U0146], e.g. Westm'

Use capital letters only when they appear in the manuscript.

Transcription of special characters: e-caudata should be transcribed using U+0119: Latin Small Letter E With Ogonek

The relevant elements from the TEI transcription module should be used (see especially 11.3.3.2, <http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCOMB>)

For retroconversion, reproduce the text as given in the printed catalogue. Where abbreviation is indicated typographically, e.g. with italic font or between parentheses, indicate this using the `<ex>` element. Typographic indications of insertion, deletion, omission, supplied text, etc., using symbols such as [], V, should be replaced with the relevant elements from the TEI transcription module.

Manuscript punctuation may be simplified by replacing the punctus versus and punctus elevatus with a point (.).

Indicate damage using the `<damage>` element.

Errors in the manuscript may be indicated using the `<sic>` and `<corr>` and `<choice>` elements. `<sic>` by itself simply signals the presence of an error, `<corr>` provides the correction.

```
<!-- MS. Add. C. 145 --> Explicit <sic>loica</sic> magistri pauli de
Venetijs
```

```
<!-- MS. Add. C. 145 --> Explicit
<choice>
  <sic>loica</sic>
  <corr>logica</corr>
</choice>
magistri pauli de Venetijs
```

The `<supplied>` element should be used for editorial additions, with the `@reason` attribute (sample values: omitted, illegible, damage, or unknown).

`<supplied>` signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe.

`@reason` one or more words indicating why the text has had to be supplied, e.g. *overbinding*, *faded-ink*, *lost-folio*, *omitted-in-original*.

`<ex>` (editorial expansion) contains a sequence of letters added by an editor or transcriber when expanding an abbreviation.

<sic> (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

Deletions by the scribe or later annotators should be recorded using the **** element. The **@rend** attribute may be used to indicate the manner of erasure: suggested values include strikethrough (the text has a line through it), erasure (the text has been scraped off), expunction.

**** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.

@rend (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or **[att.global.rendition]** presented in the source text.

Additions by the scribe or later annotators should be recorded using the **<add>** element, with the **@place** attribute. The values of the place attribute should be one of the values specified in the [EpiDoc guidelines](#), e.g:

- above: written above the line
- below: written below the line
- top: written in the top margin
- bottom: written in the top margin
- margin: written in an unspecified margin
- unspecified: written in an unspecified location

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.

@place [att.placement] specifies where this item is placed.

Corrections by the scribe or later annotators should be recorded using a combination of the **<add>** and **** elements with the **<subst>** or **<mod>** element.

```
<incipit>Theodocius dicit De coniugationibus apud grecos iii sunt  
coniugationes uerborum  
qu<subst>  
  <del>a</del>  
  <add>o</add>  
</subst>rum prima  
positione</incipit>
```

Gaps should be marked with **<gap>** element, using the **@reason** attribute to described the nature of the gap, and the **@unit** attribute, in combination with **@quantity**, **@atMost**, **@atLeast**, and if necessary **@precision**, to specify its extent. This extent should be indicated in characters if possible.

Suggested values for **@reason**

- damage: text has been omitted due to damage to the manuscript
- illegible: text has been omitted because it is illegible (but the manuscript is not otherwise damaged)
- ellipsis: text (e.g. the formulaic ending of an explicit) has been omitted for brevity
- space: the gap in the transcription represents space that has been left in the manuscript itself, usually with the intention of text being supplied at a later stage. (Note: do not use this to transcribe initial letters which have been omitted: these should be transcribed using the **<supplied>** element).
- lacuna: there is no gap in the text being transcribed, but the text is not complete (e.g. words or lines have been omitted from an exemplar).

```
<gap quantity="5" reason="damage"  
      unit="characters"/>
```

```
<gap atLeast="4" atMost="6"  
      reason="illegible" unit="character"/>
```

Questionable or partly legible readings should be marked with `<unclear>` (generates a '(?)' after the text in html)

Line beginnings should be indicated with empty `<lb>` elements, column beginnings with empty `<cb>` elements

1.3.10. Quotations from the manuscript

Quotations from the manuscript, outside of elements such as `<incipit>`, `<explicit>` and so on, should be enclosed in the `<q>` element. This may have attribute `@type` with sample values:

- pressmark: the quotation is a pressmark, shelfmark or similar
- exLibris: the quotation is an ex libris inscription
- inscription: the quotation is the inscription of a signer or reader

1.3.11. References to other manuscripts

References in the description to other manuscripts should be enclosed in `<bibl>` tags with `@type` of value MS. The `@subtype` may be used to indicate if the manuscript is held by the same institution that holds the manuscript being catalogued (value internal) or by another institution (value external). In the former case, the shelfmark should not include the location or institution name; in the latter case, location and institution should be included.

The `<ref>` element may be used to provide a link to an online catalogue or digital fascimile.

```
Eberbach, Cistercian abbey  
(: 'modern' chapter numbers added in boxes in the margin, as in  
<bibl subtype="internal" type="MS">MS. Laud Lat. 107</bibl>.
```

```
This scribe was also  
responsible for most of the Simeon manuscript (<bibl subtype="external" type="MS">  
<ref target="http://www.bl.uk/manuscripts/FullDisplay.aspx?  
ref=Add_MS_22283">London, British Library, Add. MS. 22283</ref>  
</bibl>) but  
has not yet been identified in any other manuscripts or documents.
```

1.4. The TEI Header

The TEI root element must always contain a declaration of the TEI namespace, and an `@xml:id` with the manuscripts unique identifier in the form `manuscript_1234`.

The TEI element must have a `<teiHeader>` element and a `<facsimile>` element, and may have a `<text>` element. The `<teiHeader>` element in turn must have an `@xml:lang` attribute defining the language of the description, and a `<fileDesc>` and `<revisionDesc>` element. The `<TEI>` element itself MUST have an `@xml:id` attribute whose value is the unique identifier for the manuscript.

```
<TEI xml:id="manuscript_110" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
  <teiHeader xml:lang="en">  
    <fileDesc>  
      <titleStmt>  
        <!-- Title information -->  
      </titleStmt>  
      <publicationStmt>  
        <!-- Information about the publication -->  
      </publicationStmt>  
      <sourceDesc>  
        <!-- The MS description -->  
      </sourceDesc>  
    </fileDesc>  
    <revisionDesc>  
      <!-- Revision history -->  
    </revisionDesc>  
  </teiHeader>  
  <text>
```

```
<!-- Optional text -->
</text>
<facsimile>
<!-- Image information -->
</facsimile>
</TEI>
```

1.4.1. File Description

The `<fileDesc>` element contains a `<titleStmt>`, `<publicationStmt>`, and `<sourceDesc>` element.

1.4.1.1. Title Statement

The `<titleStmt>` element summarizes the scope and authorship of the TEI file, and the cataloguing project of which it is a part, rather than for the manuscript itself (which is described in the `<sourceDesc>`). It must contain (1) a `<title>` element containing the manuscript shelfmark, (2) [for the medieval catalogue] a `<title>` element with `@type` attribute of value collection describing the collection of which the manuscript is a part, and (3) one or more `<respStmt>` elements listing the person(s) responsible for the cataloguing and encoding. The `<respStmt>` element must have a `@xml:id` attribute containing an identifier for the person(s) responsible for the cataloguing and/or encoding. The name should be recorded in a `persName` element (see [1.3.3. Personal Names](#)) and the role of the person responsible in `<resp>` elements. If known, the date should be given in the `@when` attribute of `<resp>`

```
<titleStmt>
  <title>MS. Laud Misc. 108</title>
  <title type="collection">MSS. Laud Misc. (Laud
    miscellaneous)</title>
  <respStmt xml:id="MLH">
    <resp when="2018">Cataloguer</resp>
    <resp when="2018">Encoding and markup</resp>
    <persName>Matthew Holford</persName>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

1.4.1.2. Responsibility

Where a description has been compiled from multiple sources, each source should be listed in the `<respStmt>`, and the elements of the description for which they are responsible should be identified using the `@resp` attribute with value equivalent to that source's `@xml:id`.

```
<respStmt xml:id="PA">
  <resp when="1973">Cataloguer</resp>
  <persName>Otto Pächt</persName>
  <persName>J. J. G. Alexander</persName>
</respStmt>
<respStmt xml:id="MH">
  <resp when="2017">Encoding and markup</resp>
  <persName>Matthew Holford</persName>
</respStmt>
<respStmt xml:id="SC">
  <resp when="1897">Cataloguer</resp>
  <persName>Falconer Madan</persName>
</respStmt>
<respStmt xml:id="DL">
  <resp when="1984">Cataloguer</resp>
  <persName>A. de la Mare</persName>
</respStmt>
<respStmt xml:id="DD">
  <resp when="1984">Cataloguer</resp>
  <persName>A. G. Watson</persName>
</respStmt>
```

```

<provenance resp="#DL">
  <persName key="person_2854" role="fmo">William Wilson</persName>, F.S.A., of the
  Minories, his
  sale, Christie's, 31 Jan.-1 Feb. 1833, lot 56 on 1 Feb.;
  bought by Thorpe for £53. 11s.
</provenance>
<provenance resp="#DL">Purchased from Thorpe by
<persName key="person_69848690" role="fmo">Douce</persName>, Feb.
  1833.</provenance>

```

1.4.1.3. Publication Statement

The `<publicationStmt>` summarizes the publication of the TEI document, rather than the manuscript itself (which is described in the `<sourceDesc>`). For union catalogues such as Fihrist, it should contain an `<email>` containing the address to which enquiries should be sent, and an `<idno>` of @type marcOrg containing the MARC Organization Code of the institution (e.g. "UkCu" for University of Cambridge).

```

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Special Collections, Bodleian
  Libraries</publisher>
  <address>
    <orgName type="department">Special Collections</orgName>
    <orgName type="unit">Bodleian Libraries</orgName>
    <orgName type="institution">University of
      Oxford</orgName>
    <street>Weston Library, Broad Street</street>
    <settlement key="place_7011931">Oxford</settlement>
    <postCode>OX1 3BG</postCode>
    <country>United Kingdom</country>
  </address>
  <distributor>
    <email>specialcollections.enquiries@bodleian.ox.ac.uk</email>
  </distributor>
  <!--Availability statement will be added here-->
  <idno type="msID">MS_Laud_Misc_108</idno>
  <idno type="collection">Laud Misc</idno>
  <idno type="catalogue">Western</idno>
</publicationStmt>
<!-- TODO: availability statement -->

```

1.4.2. Revision Description

The `<revisionDesc>` element records ONLY major changes to the catalogue entry, such as re-dating or re-location, addition of provenance information, new identification of contents, etc. It must contain at least one change element, which must have the @when attribute and may have the @who attribute (which may be linked to the xml:id of the person in the `<respStmt>` element in 1.4. The TEI Header). The changes should be recorded in a reverse chronological order with the most recent change first.

```

<revisionDesc>
  <change when="2018-06-15" xml:id="MMM">
    <persName>Mitch
      Fraas/Mapping Manuscript Migrations</persName>
      Provenance and acquisition information added using
    <ref target="https://github.com/littlegustv/oxfordupdates/blob/master/test_case_for_oxford_prov.rb">https://github.com/littlegustv/oxfordupdates/blob/master/test_case_for_oxford_prov.rb</ref>
      in collaboration with the
    <ref target="http://mappingmanuscriptmigrations.org/">Mapping
      Manuscript Migrations</ref> project.'</change>
    <change when="2017-07-01">First online publication.</change>
  </revisionDesc>

```

1.5. Subject Classifications

In some catalogues, the fourth button in the header is "Subjects" rather than "Places". This is an index of subject classifications, using the Library of Congress subject heading and name authorities.

```
<encodingDesc>
  <classDecl>
    <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
      <bibl>
        <ref target="http://id.loc.gov/authorities/about.html#lcsh">Library of
        Congress Subject Headings</ref>
      </bibl>
    </taxonomy>
  </classDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<profileDesc>
  <textClass>
    <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
      <list>
        <item>
          <term key="subject_sh2008111606">Shafiites--Early works
          to 1800</term>
        </item>
        <item>
          <term key="subject_sh85072984">Koran--Recitation</term>
        </item>
      </list>
    </keywords>
  </textClass>
</profileDesc>
```

Keywords apply to the manuscript as a whole. You can associate each with one or more specific works by enclosing the `<term>` in a `<ref>` whose `@target` attribute is a space-separated list of pointers to the `@xml:id` values of `<msItem>` elements, prefixed with #.

Each `<term>` must have a `key` attribute containing the LoC authority entry identifier prefixed with "subject_". The text within the `<term>` element is also required, as this is what is displayed on the manuscript's page on the web site. It can be a variant of LoC's preferred term, if you think that more appropriate. If the term hasn't been used before, it will be automatically added to the web site the next time it is re-indexed.

1.6. Manuscript Description

The `<sourceDesc>` element contains a single child element, the `<msDesc>`. Within that is all the information about the manuscript as a physical object, its constituent parts, and intellectual works represented within.

All manuscript descriptions must be informed by attention to codicological units. In other words, whether the manuscript was created in one place, over one period of time, or is a composite of parts from multiple sources, assembled at a later date.

If the manuscript forms a single codicological unit, its intellectual content, physical description, and history should be described directly under the `<msDesc>` element. Individual works can vary in date or hands while still being of a single source. In such cases, add `<note>` elements to the `<msItem>` for each work, and an overview for the whole manuscript in `<physDesc>`, `<history>`, etc. Do not simply enter information (dates, dimensions, etc) as lists of `<ref>` elements.

If the manuscript comprises [multiple codicological units](#), each should be described in its own `<msPart>` element, and only information common to the whole manuscript should be described directly under the `<msDesc>` element. This will typically include aspects of the physical description (e.g. extent, foliation, binding), aspects of history (notably provenance and acquisition), but possibly also some intellectual content (for example, if a table of contents for the whole volume was added by a later owner, or if the manuscript has replacement leaves). Conversely information relevant to each unit should be described in separate `<msPart>` elements.

In each case the following elements are used:

```

<msDesc>
  <!-- Common information -->
  <msPart>
    <!-- Codicological unit 1 -->
    </msPart>
    <msPart>
      <!-- Codicological unit 2 -->
      </msPart>
    </msDesc>

```

1.6.1. The Manuscript Identifier

Information about the current location and shelfmark of the manuscript should be given in the `<msIdentifier>` element using the following elements in the following order: `<country>`, `<settlement>`, `<institution>`, `<repository>`, and `<idno>` which must have `@type` with value shelfmark.

If the manuscript is well-known by another name this should be recorded in a `<msName>` element. Former shelfmarks may be given inside an `<altIdentifier>` element in an `<idno>` element (`@type` attribute with value former). If the manuscript has a reference number in another catalogue or reference work, this should be given inside an `<altIdentifier>` element in an `<idno>` element. The following values are currently used in the medieval catalogue:

- SCN - Summary catalogue number
- TM - identifier in Trismegistos
- PR - papyrological reference
- diktyon - Dikyon number

```

<msIdentifier>
  <country>United Kingdom</country>
  <region type="county">Oxfordshire</region>
  <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
  <institution>University of Oxford</institution>
  <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
  <idno type="shelfmark">MS. Gr. class. b. 7 (P)</idno>
  <altIdentifier type="internal">
    <idno type="SCN">36946</idno>
  </altIdentifier>
  <altIdentifier type="external">
    <idno type="PR">P. Oxy. VII 1032</idno>
  </altIdentifier>
  <altIdentifier type="external">
    <idno type="PR">P. Oxy. VII 1049</idno>
  </altIdentifier>
  <altIdentifier type="external">
    <idno type="TM">20328</idno>
  </altIdentifier>
  <altIdentifier type="external">
    <idno type="TM">28329</idno>
  </altIdentifier>
</msIdentifier>

```

1.6.2. The Heading

For manuscripts described in detail, and/or containing more than one item, the `<head>` element should provide (1) a brief descriptive title (2) place of origin if known (3) date of origin. If the latter two are unknown, use the `<summary>` element within `<msContents>` instead.

```

<head>Ovid; England, 12th century</head>

```

1.6.3. Intellectual Content

The intellectual content of the manuscript or codicological unit should be listed in the `<msContents>` element.

1.6.3.1. Summary (optional)

The `<summary>` element can be used to provide a brief prose account of a manuscript's contents and significance, unless this has already been covered by the `<head>`.

1.6.3.2. Language(s) of the manuscript as a whole (optional)

Give the text language for the codicological unit in the `<textLang>` element , as a child of `<msContents>`, immediately after `<summary>` (if used), with the `@mainLang` attribute.

```
<textLang mainLang="grc">Greek</textLang>
```

For bilingual or multilingual units give the other languages in the `@otherLangs` attribute, as a space-separated list.

```
<textLang mainLang="grc" otherLangs="la en">Greek with some  
Latin and English</textLang>
```

In some cases the decision of which language is 'main' and which is/are 'other' may be rather arbitrary.

The attributes values used should conform to the BCP 47 standard (<http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/bcp/bcp47.txt>) which start with two-or-three-letter ISO 639 codes for languages, then an ISO 15924 code for the script, and finally IANA language subtags (<https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry/language-subtag-registry>) for other information, such as methods of transliteration.

If the unit contains multiple works, in different languages or scripts, the `<textLang>` element should be used in the `<msItem>` instead, q.v.

According to the conventions of the catalogue, languages may be encoded at a high or low level of granularity - for example, Middle English may be encoded as "enm" or as "en", Anglo-Norman French may be encoded as "fr" or "xno".

1.6.3.3. Manuscript Item

The `<msItem>` element may be used:

- To describe an item of intellectual content (including blank leaves if necessary)
- To provide various notes about the manuscript's contents (e.g. to compare items and their order with the contents of other manuscripts, or to provide a note of content now missing that was formerly present.)

As a general rule, each distinct item in the manuscript should be described in a distinct `<msItem>` tag.

The items should be numbered with the `@n` attribute. (This is particularly useful when the `<msItem>` element is nested, say to describe sections within works, or works in collections of works.) For retroconversion, follow the numbering system used in the original catalogue. For new cataloguing, use arabic numbers, using a decimal point when `<msItem>` is nested. For example, for the second section of the first work:

```
<msItem n="1.2">  
<!-- ... --&gt;<br/></msItem>
```

Just as the @n attribute provides a way for readers to reference and locate items, @xml:id attributes do the same for computers. So these ideally should be added too:

```
<msItem n="1.2"
  xml:id="Add_1056-item1-item2">
<!-- ... -->
</msItem>
```

Blank pages may be recorded as part of the item they follow, in a separate [<note>](#) element. The [<locus>](#) element may be used to encode the folio(s).

```
<note>
  <locus from="187v" to="187v">Fol. 187v</locus>
  blank.
</note>
```

More extensive stretches of blank pages can be placed in a separate [<msItem>](#).

```
<msItem>
  <locus from="187v" to="189v">(fol. 187v-189v)</locus>
  <note>Blank.</note>
</msItem>
```

Pages containing short notes or scribbles by later hands should be recorded in the [<additions>](#) element, see [1.6.4.7. Additions](#).

1.6.3.3.1. What is a manuscript item?

The Guidelines offer the following definitions: ‘each discrete item in a manuscript’; ‘an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript’. Often the identification of these works or items does not pose difficulties, but many more complex cases do occur.

A more helpful definition of a manuscript item may be ‘a complete work or item, or a self-contained part of a larger work with (potentially) independent circulation’. A ‘self-contained part of a larger work’ could be a letter in a letter-collection, or a sermon in a homiliary; it could also represent the biblical text or the commentary in a glossed biblical manuscript.

As a guiding principle, where possible and practicable the [<msItem>](#) element should be used to markup up the work as a whole, and its self-contained parts, and the nesting of the different [<msItem>](#) elements should express the relationship between part and whole.

However, it is recognised that it may not be practical (for example) to markup every letter in a letter-collection as an [<msItem>](#), and that the contents and order of a collection may simply be recorded in a [<note>](#) element.

```
<author key="person_95147024">Jerome</author>
<title key="work_2426">112 letters</title>
<note>
  <title>Epist.</title> 57 (38), 73 (44), 129 (57), 35
  (1), 36 (2; as 3 items, dividing in sects. 10-15), 62
  (3), 19 (4), 20 (5), 15 (6), 16 (7), 18B (8), 18A (9),
  21 (10), 14 (37), 52 (33), 58 (34), 55 (?), 83-4
  (39-40),
  <!-- etc. -->
</note>
```

Difficulties are posed by:

- texts which circulate with shorter related texts, for example Augustine’s *De Trinitate*, preceded in Merton College MS. 32 by the relevant extract from *Retractationes* and by Ep. 74.

- texts followed or preceded by indexes (e.g. Merton College MS. 34, Augustine on the Psalms followed (fols. 385-412v) by a subject index.
- brief items not catalogued in detail or not considered worth cataloguing in full, e.g. Merton College MS. 13 art. 6, Proverbia Wiponis ‘followed by brief theological notes’. Merton College MS. 13, art. 22, Prosper, Responsiones, ‘Followed by ‘Quot secte ludeorum. Quot fuerunt secte ludeorum qui fuerunt separati a communi uita ...’, and extracts from Augustine, Jerome and Ambrose ff. 116v-17v.’

Recommended best practice is to catalogue and encode so that each item mentioned is discoverable. This can be achieved in different ways according to the information available. Suggested encodings for the above examples are:

```
<msItem>
<author key="person_66806872">AUGUSTINE</author>
<title key="work_784">De Trinitate</title>
<note>Preceded by the relevant extract from <title key="work_804">Retract.
</title> and the <title key="work_801">Epistola ad Aurelium (Epist.
74).</title>
</note>
</msItem>
```

```
<msItem>
<locus>(fols. 1-384v)</locus>
<author key="person_66806872">AUGUSTINE</author>
<title key="work_790">Enarrationes in Psalmos
77-148</title>
<rubric>Incipit tractatus de psalmo septuagesimo
septimo</rubric>
<incipit>Psalmus iste ea continet quem ueteri populo
diuinitus acta narrantur</incipit>
<explicit>(<note>ends impf. in Ps. 148: 17;
catchwords)</note> Cantus est cum laude
Dei</explicit>
<note>
<title>CPL</title> 283; <title>CCSL</title> 39-40
(2<hi rend="superscript">nd</hi> edn., 1990), p.
1066 - 40, p. 2176 line 39.</note>
</msItem>
<msItem>
<locus>(fols. 385-412v)</locus>
<msItem n="a">
<title type="desc">An index in 4 cols of first
verses of each Psalm</title>
</msItem>
<msItem n="b">
<title type="desc">Subject-index, '<hi rend="italic">Abissus</hi>-
<hi rend="italic">Zelus</hi>'</title>
<incipit>Abissus dicuntur in profundo
peccati</incipit>
<note>f. 413rv blank</note>
</msItem>
</msItem>
```

1.6.3.3.2.

For sample encodings of liturgical books (a Book of Hours) and a Bible, see the Appendix.

1.6.3.3.3. Texts with gloss and commentary

Treatment of these texts will vary according to the arrangement of text, gloss, and commentary; whether gloss and commentary are continuous; whether gloss and commentary are contemporary or later, and

whether they form an integral part of the mise-en-page; whether there are multiple layers of gloss / commentary. Examples:

```
<!-- MS. Junius 27 --><msItem>
<note>Psalter with Old English gloss</note>
<msItem>
<title>Psalms (Roman version)</title>
<note>Beginning imperfectly at 2.4 and ending at
144.6</note>
<incipit defective="true">Qui habitat in
caelis</incipit>
<explicit defective="true">terribiliorum tuorum
dicent</explicit>
</msItem>
<msItem>
<title type="desc">Continuous interlinear gloss in
Old English</title>
<incipit>se eardað in heofonum</incipit>
<explicit>þinra eyes fulnessa cweoðað</explicit>
</msItem>
</msItem>
```

```
<!-- Christ Church MS. 95 --><msItem>
<locus> Fols 1-161<hi rend="superscript">v</hi>
</locus>
<title key="work_13747" type="desc">Pauline Epistles,
with gloss </title>
<msItem>
<incipit type="text">Pavlvs seruus ihesu cristi
uocatus apostolus segregatus</incipit>
</msItem>
<msItem>
<note>Interlinear gloss:</note>
<incipit>Saluatoris Regis sacerdotis cui merito
omnes serui predicandum</incipit>
</msItem>
<msItem>
<note>Marginal gloss:</note>
<incipit>Pro altercatione scribit apostolus Romanis
confutans modo gentiles</incipit>
</msItem>
<!-- ... -->
</msItem>
```

1.6.3.3.4. Relating manuscript items to quires

Some catalogues/cataloguers indicate the relationship between each item and the quires of the codex. This may be encoded as follows:

```
<msItem>
<note>Items 2-3 occupy quires 3-4.</note>
</msItem>
```

1.6.3.3.5. General notes on the content

These may be placed at the beginning or end of the `<msContents>` section in a separate `<msItem>` element.

```

<msItem>
  <note>Items (a)-(i), (j), (k) are in Vienna,
    Nationalbibl. MS. 415 in the same order.</note>
</msItem>

```

1.6.3.3.6. Added texts

Significant added texts should be described in `<msContents>`, NOT in `<additions>`. Decision as to what is 'significant' will be a matter of judgement, but in general if the text is to be discoverable - if it is important for the text to be identified or described, or to have its rubrics / incipits recorded, etc. - it should be encoded using `<msItem>`. This may involve some reorganization of the description during retroconversion.

Two possible approaches are described here. Each may be appropriate in different circumstances, dependent for example on the nature of the manuscript and/or the nature of the description being converted:

- describe every `<msItem>` in sequence, using `<note>` to indicate if it is a later addition
- Group added texts together in a separate section at the end of `<msContents>`, preceded by

```

<msItem>
  <note>Added texts:</note>
  <!-- added texts here -->
</msItem>

```

```

<!-- Christ Church MS. 105 --><msItem>
  <note>Added texts:</note>
  <msItem n="a">
    <locus>Fol. 164<hi rend="superscript">v</hi>
    </locus>
    <title key="work_10687" type="desc">Calendar</title>
  <!-- ... -->
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="b">
    <locusGrp>
      <locus from="356rb" to="356vb">Fols 356<hi rend="superscript">rb-vb</hi>,
    </locus>
      <locus from="374ra" to="374rb">374<hi rend="superscript">rab</hi>
    </locus>
    </locusGrp>
    <incipit>heremita yu semest a fela <gap quantity="6" unit="chars"/>
    <lb/>
    <gap quantity="18" unit="chars"/> was he<gap quantity="2" unit="chars"/>
    <lb/> but yu wit me al ny3t</incipit>
    <incipit>
      <locus>[fol. 374<hi rend="superscript">ra</hi>]</locus> And you seeme welle...
    </incipit>
    <incipit>
      <locus>[fol. 374<hi rend="superscript">rb</hi>]</locus> So help me lorde
      Jesu</incipit>
    <explicit>
      <gap quantity="13" unit="chars"/>d ye
    <gap quantity="2" unit="chars"/>y<gap quantity="1" unit="chars"/> prince <lb/> For
    yis work as tu
      worth</explicit>
    <title key="work_12461">The King and the
      Hermit</title>
    <note> A version of 'The king and the hermit' (IMEV
      1764; DIMEV 2918), ed. W. Carew Hazlitt,
    <title>Remains of the Early Popular Poetry of
      England</title>, 4 vols (London, 1864-66), 1:12-34
      and, most recently, George Shuffleton,
    <title>Ashmole 61: A Compilation of Popular Middle

```

English Verse</title> (Kalamazoo, MI, 2008), 401-13, 590-6, 627-8 (with our copy opening with a version of l. 285). Here presented as if a dramatic dialogue, apparently extending beyond the fragmentary conclusion of the sole previously available witness, BodL, MS Ashmole 61, from which it also widely diverges. Written in on blank leaves in plummet, partially washed and much faded, in anglicana, s. xiv<hi rend="superscript">ex</hi>. The incipit above corresponds to line 291 of the printed text (24); the text may begin on the virtually illegible fol. 374.</note>

```
</msItem>
<msItem n="c">
<locus>Fols 372<hi rend="superscript">ra</hi>-73<hi rend="superscript">vb</hi>
</locus>
<incipit defective="true"> an sit agend' indic'
 officio ut notatur Capitulo de edis
 do<ex>m</ex>ini</incipit>
<explicit defective="true">clericus non intellegitur
 quod ad hoc potenter laico nec cedens euattura
 ratione afficitur</explicit>
<title key="work_14189" type="desc">Questions in
 canon law (?)</title>
<note>Apparently questions in canon law, incomplete
 at both ends. In double columns, each column 255
 mm x 80-85 mm, with 12 mm between columns, in
 about 64 lines to the column. Written in academic
 gothic textura quadrata, s. xiv med.</note>
</msItem>
<msItem n="d">
<locus>Fol. 374</locus>
<note>The opening of a list of the readings
 (epistle, lesson, gospel) for Sundays and
 feastdays; in gothic textura quadrata, s.
 xiii/xiv.</note>
</msItem>
</msItem>
```

1.6.3.3.7. Locus

Give the start and end folio of each item according to the guidelines specified in 1.3.2. References to Locations within a Manuscript. If there are several items on a single folio, you may specify on which line the text starts and ends. For texts scattered over more than one location in the manuscript the <locusGrp> element should be used.

```
<locusGrp>
<locus from="356rb" to="356vb">Fols 356<hi rend="superscript">rb-vb</hi>, </locus>
<locus from="374ra" to="374rb">374<hi rend="superscript">rab</hi>
</locus>
</locusGrp>
```

1.6.3.3.8. Author

The author of a manuscript item, if known, should be recorded inside the <author> element. This MUST have a reference, using the @key attribute, to the persons authority file, see 1.3.3. Personal Names. The <author> element should be omitted for anonymous works.

```
<author key="person_66806872">Augustine</author>
```

The author name should be given in a standardized form. For retroconversion, use the form of the name given in the source text; for new cataloguing, use a standard form from the usual reference works.

If you are not responsible for maintaining the authority files, go to the web site, click the People button, and search to see if the same person already exists in another manuscript in the same catalogue, with the same or similar (or translated) name. If they have, set the @key attribute to the identifier of the existing record, which is the part of the URL after the last slash, starting with "person_". If you can find the person by searching in VIAF (<http://viaf.org/>) set the value to "person_" followed by their VIAF number. Otherwise, leave the @key attribute blank and an identifier will be assigned to it at a later date.

Where an author has multiple names (e.g. translations or transliterations) add these as child `<persName>` elements (with @xml:lang attributes). Do not use `<foreign>` in this context. But the @key attribute remains on the `<author>` element. Multiple `<author>` elements should be used for works with multiple authors (not other contributors, such as scribes, these should be added as `<editor>` elements with @role attributes.)

(Optional) Either `<author>` or `<persName>` elements can contain `<surname>`, `<forename>` and `<addName>` child elements to divide up the full name as appropriate to naming customs (`<addName>` has a @type attribute in which you can specify "laqab", "kunyah", "khitab", "nisbah", etc.)

(Optional) To indicate that an author's name is not present in the MS., use `<supplied>`.

```
<author key="person_66806872">
  <supplied>Augustine</supplied>
</author>
```

1.6.3.3.8.1. Pseudonymous, multiple, uncertain, disputed and attributed authorship

Texts which circulated consistently but incorrectly under the name of an author, but whose true author is not known, are by convention attributed to Pseudo-Augustine, Pseudo-Ambrose, etc., and these conventional attributions should be followed.

```
<author key="person_7386286">Ps.-Augustine</author>
<title key="work_3881">De Vera et Falsa
Poenitentia</title>
```

Texts which circulated consistently but incorrectly under the name of an author, but whose true author IS now known or suspected, should be catalogued under the author which modern scholarship prefers. In some cases, where the association with other authors is strong, it will be useful to give these in addition.

```
<author key="person_79148266">Haimo of Auxerre
(Ps.-Haimo of Halberstadt, Ps.-Cassiodorus)</author>
<title key="work_1946">Commentary on the Song of
Songs</title>
```

Note that the pseudonymous authors do not have their own `<author>` element (these may be given in the authority file: q.v.).

Where the attribution of a text in the manuscript differs from the attribution of modern scholarship, this can be recorded either in a `<note>` element or by relevant markup in the `<rubric>` element. Use the `<persName>` element with attribute @role of value att (= 'attributed name')

```
<author key="person_84971682">Ivo of Chartres</author>
<title>Epistola ad Seuerinum</title>
<rubric>Incipit liber <persName key="person_100187025"
  role="att">Anselmi</persName> de caritate</rubric>
```

```
<author key="person_209749583">
  <supplied>Ps.-Bede</supplied>
</author>
<title key="work_6131">
  <supplied>Commentary on
  John</supplied>
</title>
```

```
<note>Cap. 3. Here ascribed to  
<persName key="person_66806872" role="att">Augustine</persName>.</note>
```

Multiple authors can be indicated using repeated `<author>` elements.

```
<msItem n="1" xml:id="MS_Douce_332-item1">  
  <author key="person_95220054">Guillaume de  
    Lorris</author>  
  <author key="person_304922354">Jean de  
    Meung</author>  
  <title key="work_1919">Le Roman de la Rose</title>  
  <textLang mainLang="fr">French</textLang>  
</msItem>
```

Uncertainty regarding authorship can be indicated using the `@cert` attribute. Following the usage of Richard Sharpe, ‘attrib.’ can be used for modern scholarly attributions of authorship; ‘ascr.’ denotes ascriptions in manuscripts; and ‘(?)’ denotes broader uncertainty.

```
<author cert="medium" key="person_2205">Roger of Caen  
(attrib.) (Ps.-Alexander Nequam)</author>  
<title key="work_4455">De professione monachorum</title>
```

1.6.3.3.9. Editor / translator / etc.

For secondary statements of responsibility, use the `<editor>` element, distinguished with a `@role` attribute containing a three-letter code (or multiple codes separated by spaces) selected from the MARC relators list (<https://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relaterm.html>). Do not add a label for their role, as this will be added when displayed on the web site. For example, for a translator:

```
<editor key="person_5150639" role="trl">  
  <persName>Abū al-Fażl ibn Mubārak, 1551-1602</persName>  
  <persName xml:lang="fa">ابو الفضل بن مبارك علامي</persName>  
</editor>
```

In all other respects, `<editor>` elements can contain the same child elements as `<author>` (eg. multiple `<persName>` elements) and attributes (e.g. a `@key` linking them to an entry in the persons authority file, so that they are indexed on the web site.) Further details about their role in the creation of the work can be explained in a separate `<note>`.

Alternatively (this is current practice in the medieval catalogue) information about translators, etc., may be provided in the `<note>` element as follows:

```
<author key="person_95155322"> Origen </author>  
<title key="work_3395">Homilies on Joshua</title>  
<note>(Latin tr. by <persName key="person_77679446" role="trl">Rufinus</persName>)</note>
```

1.6.3.3.10. Title

The title element provides a standarized uniform title or a descriptive title for a manuscript item.

For retroconversion, use the form of the title given in the source catalogue (if one is given); for new cataloguing (or if the converted catalogue does not supply a title), use a standard form from the usual reference works; if a standard form cannot be found, one should be supplied by the cataloguer. By default titles are displayed in italic font.

If the title is descriptive, the @type attribute should then be set with the value desc. This will display the title in normal font. Alternative titles should be give a @type of alt, and main and sub can be used if there is a subtitle.

When providing translations of the title, or multiple versions in different scripts or forms of transliteration, add them as sibling `<title>` elements, each with an @xml:lang attribute. Do not use `<foreign>` except to mark up a word or phrase within a title as being in a different language to the rest of the title.

Works which are to be indexed (i.e. you consider significant enough to be listed under the Works button on the web site) MUST have a reference using the @key attribute to the works authority file

```
<title key="work_15602" type="desc">Commentary on  
Apocalypse</title>
```

If you are not responsible for maintaining the authority files, go to the web site, click the Works button, and search to see if the same work already exists in another manuscript in the same catalogue, with the same or similar (or translated) title. If it has, set the @key attribute in the `<title>` element(s) to the identifier of the existing record, which is the part of the URL after the last slash, starting with "work_". Otherwise, leave the key attribute blank and an identifier will be assigned to it at a later date.

(optional) to indicate the title is not given in the manuscript, use the `<supplied>` element.

```
<author key="person_89657091">  
  <supplied>Bonaventure</supplied>  
</author>  
<title key="work_1144">  
  <supplied>Legenda  
    maior</supplied>  
</title>
```

1.6.3.3.11. Rubrics, incipits, explicits, final rubrics, and colophons.

Retroconversion: include these items if they are given. New cataloguing: include these items for all texts. The absence of a rubric need not be noted, although it can be included in a `<note>` if it is significant (e.g. all other texts do have rubrics).

Follow the principles of transcription outlined above [1.3.9. Transcription](#) to transcribe the MS. or to encode the text given in an existing catalogue.

It is assumed that the language of incipits, etc., is the same as the language specified in `<textLang>`. It is not necessary to use @xml:lang to specify the language of the incipit (etc.), unless multiple languages are involved (e.g. `<msItem>` with `<rubric>` in French but `<incipit>` in Latin).

```
<msItem xml:id="MS_Buchanan_e_13-item1-item5-item1">  
  <locus>(fols.18r-21v)</locus>  
  <rubric xml:lang="fr">Oraison tres deuote de nostre  
    dame</rubric>  
  <incipit xml:lang="la">Obsecro te</incipit>  
  <note>[masculine forms] (cf. MS. Buchanan e. 2)</note>  
</msItem>
```

For mutilated items the attribute @defective should be used with value true.

The formatting of the rubric can be recorded in the @rend attribute (see [1.3.7. Formatting](#)). Comments on the rubric (e.g. if it is a later addition) can be recorded using a `<note>` tag inside the `<rubric>` tag.

```
<msItem n="6" xml:id="MS_Ashmole_304-item6">  
  <locus from="64r" to="70v">(fols. 64r-70v)</locus>  
  <title key="work_16047">Divinacio  
    ciceronalis</title>
```

```

<note>(incomplete)</note>
<note>See A. A. Guardo, 'La <foreign rend="italic">Divinacio
Ciceronalis</foreign>: un libro de
suertes medieval. Estudio introductorio', in
<title>De lo humano y lo divino en la literatura
medieval: santos, ángeles y demonios</title>, ed.
Juan Paredes Núñez (2012), 17-34.</note>
<note>The surviving section in this MS. comprises the
responses, fourteen (of originally 20) sections of
21 lines, the first line of each in red, each
section attributed to sun, moon, a planet or a sign
of the zodiac (Guardo's section 4). The text in MS.
Digby 46 has in addition a miniature of Cicero,
twenty prognostical questions, and directions for
use (see Guardo).</note>
<rubric>Sol iudex primus</rubric>
<incipit defective="true">
<note>(first line in
red)</note> Mittam te ad amicum meum et dicet tibi
uerum Certe tibi dico prope est ut gaudeas et mutes
fortunam</incipit>
</msItem>

```

Note that TEI distinguishes between the `<finalRubric>`, which contains a statement relating to the end of a particular work (e.g. 'explicit liber'), and the `<colophon>`, which contains a statement about the scribe and/or date and/or place of writing ('scriptum apud Oxon.'). If the final rubric and colophon form a single sentence, put both inside `<finalRubric>` with @type attribute of value colophon. (The `<colophon>` element cannot have the @type attribute.)

```

<finalRubric type="colophon">Explicitiunt omelie Iohannis
Crisostomi patriarche Constantinopolitanis super Matheum
operis imperfecti scripte anno Domini 1382</finalRubric>

```

Multiple incipits, rubrics, etc., e.g. for prologues, dedications, text, should be distinguished using @type (and if necessary by location, by including a child `<locus>` element at the start of each one). Suggested values of the @type attribute are prologue (use for preface, prohemium, etc), dedication, text

```

<msItem>
<locus from="12v" to="12v">(fol. 12v)</locus>
<author key="person_11566602">Garland</author>
<title key="work_1724" type="desc">Compotus</title>
<incipit type="prologue">Sepe uolumina domni
Bede</incipit>
<incipit type="text">Superioris igitur pagine</incipit>
</msItem>

```

Use of the @type attribute will not always be possible in retroversion if the catalogue does not provide the information. In this case a series of the relevant elements without @type should be used.

```

<!-- Merton College MS. 20 --&gt;&lt;msItem n="1"&gt;
&lt;locus from="1r" to="14v"&gt;(fols. 1-14v)&lt;/locus&gt;
&lt;author key="person_100187025"&gt;Anselm&lt;/author&gt;
&lt;title key="work_537"&gt;Monologion&lt;/title&gt;
&lt;rubric&gt;Incipit epistola Anselmi archiepiscopi ad
Lanfrancum primatum Anglie&lt;/rubric&gt;
&lt;incipit&gt;Reuerendo et amando suo domino&lt;/incipit&gt;
&lt;rubric&gt;Incipit prohemium beati Anselmi archiepiscopi in
monologion R.&lt;/rubric&gt;
&lt;incipit&gt;Quidam fratres sepe me studioseque&lt;/incipit&gt;
&lt;note&gt;(&lt;foreign rend="italic"&gt;capitula&lt;/foreign&gt;)&lt;/note&gt;
&lt;incipit&gt;Si quis unam naturam summam omnique que
sunt&lt;/incipit&gt;
&lt;explicit&gt;Deus ineffabilis trinus et unus&lt;/explicit&gt;
&lt;finalRubric&gt;Finitur monologion Anselmi.
Explicit.&lt;/finalRubric&gt;
&lt;bibl&gt;
</pre>

```

```
<title>SAO</title> 1. 13-87.</bibl>  
</msItem>
```

The `<rubric>`, `<incipit>`, etc. elements should not have final punctuation, unless they contain more than one sentence, in which case there should be a closing period.

1.6.3.3.11.1. Complex incipits

The `<incipit>` elements in a catalogue may be processed to generate an alphabetical list of incipits similar to those in a print catalogue.

For long and complex incipits, care should be taken to mark up the content in a way that enables multiple index entries to be generated to aid discovery.

Incipits containing an initial address should be divided into two `<incipit>` elements, the first containing the address and the second the incipit itself.

```
<author key="person_47155211">PETER OF WALTHAM</author>  
<title key="work_3545">Remediarium Conuersorum</title>  
<incipit>Reuerendo patri Ricardo ecclesie Londoniensi  
episcopo tercio suus Petrus Blesensis archidiaconus  
eiusdem ecclesie sic currere per temporalia ut  
brauium apprehendat eternum</incipit>  
<incipit>De beata mentis solitudine necnon et euangelice  
paupertatis beatitudine </incipit>
```

Incipits of sermons often begin with a biblical lemma, and in a printed catalogue would be indexed both under the lemma and under the incipit. These should be marked up using the `<cit>`, `<quote>`, and `<bibl>` elements as follows.

```
<incipit>  
  <cit>  
    <quote rend="italic">Qui mihi ministrat me  
      sequitur.</quote>  
    <bibl>Io. 15.</bibl>  
  </cit> In his uerbis notantur  
duo; primum est Christo debita  
administracio  
</incipit>
```

If the source is not given, the `<quote>` element only may be used.

```
<incipit>  
  <quote rend="italic">  
    <supplied>V</supplied>erbo  
    Domini celi firmati sunt</quote> &c. Tria in  
hiis uerbis sunt notari primum omnium sacre  
scripture dignitas  
</incipit>
```

Where a brief lemma would not typically be indexed separately (e.g. in a glossary or commentary), but would be considered an integral part of the incipit, the lemma may only be distinguished typographically.

```
<incipit>  
  <hi rend="italic">Abba</hi> secundum Papiam  
Syrum nomen est  
</incipit>
```

1.6.3.3.12. Note, bibliography and additional information

Additional information about the text - for example whether or not the text is complete; whether or not the text is glossed or annotated; other copies of the text; references to repertories and editions - can be presented in various ways. It may be convenient in retroconversion to include this information in a single **<note>** element. Equally some of this information may be encoded more appropriately using other elements, such as **<bibl>** or **<filiation>**. Compare:

```
<msItem n="3">
<locus>(fols 54r-73r)</locus>
<author key="person_196789494">
<supplied>Ps.</supplied>
Athanasios</author>
<title key="work_5884">Disputatio contra Arium</title>
<note>CPG 2250, PG 28.440-501.</note>
</msItem>
```

```
<msItem n="3">
<locus>(fols 54r-73r)</locus>
<author key="person_196789494">
<supplied>Ps.</supplied>
Athanasios</author>
<title key="work_5884">Disputatio contra Arium</title>
<listBibl>
<bibl>CPG 2250</bibl>
<bibl>PG 28, 440-501</bibl>
</listBibl>
</msItem>
```

The **<filiation>** element provides information about the relationship of the manuscript with other surviving manuscripts in terms of their content. For example:

```
<msItem n="2">
<title xml:lang="ara-Latn-x-lc">Khulāṣat al-ikhtiṣāṣ fi
ma'rifat al-quwā wa-al-khawāṣṣ</title>
<filiation>There is another manuscript of this work at
the Birmingham University, Mingana Collection,
Islamic Arabic Ms. no. 933 (1485)</filiation>
</msItem>
```

A **<bibl>** containing a **<ref>** element can be used to link to external resources related to a work, such as printed catalogue pages.

```
<listBibl>
<bibl>
<ref target="http://www.lib.cam.ac.uk/arabic_catalogues/browne/view.php?
id=76">no. 673</ref>
</bibl>
</listBibl>
```

Do not use this method to link to digitized copies, use **<surrogates>** instead.

1.6.4. Physical description

The physical description includes several different aspects of the manuscript (or part of a manuscript) including:

- aspects of the form, support, extent, and quire structure of the manuscript object and of the way in which the text is laid out on the page.
- the style of writing used and discussion of any decorative features, any musical notation employed, and of any annotations or marginalia.
- discussion of binding, seals, and any accompanying material.

1.6.4.1. secundo folio

Provide a transcription of the words found at the beginning of the recto side of the second leaf of the manuscript. These were often used in medieval book-lists or inventories and may sometimes be useful for identification of provenance – or simply for modern-day identification.

This information is placed inside the `<secFol>` element, inside a `<p>` element, directly after `<physDesc>`

If the manuscript begins imperfectly – for instance, if the first leaf of text is missing – provide both the original and the present-day secundo folio, in order to avoid any ambiguity.

If the manuscript begins with prefatory paratextual matter, such as an index, you should record the secundo folio in both this and the main text. Use `<locus>` to record the location of each.

If the secundo folio begins mid-word, the missing portion may be provided inside a `<supplied>` element

```
<!-- MS. Buchanan e. 10 --><physDesc>
<p>
  <secFol>
    <locus from="3r" to="3r">(Calendar, fol. 3)</locus>
    KL Fleurier a</secFol>
  <secFol>
    <locus from="15r" to="15r">(text, fol. 15)</locus>
    venientem in</secFol>
  </p>
</physDesc>
```

1.6.4.2. Object Description

The physical form of the carrier should be set in the `@form` attribute of the `<objectDesc>` element. This should refer to the form of the object in its original state, before any mutilation, rebinding etc. The following values are recommended:

- codex: multiple gatherings of leaves, held within a binding of some kind, and used by turning the leaves.
- roll: a parchment membrane, or two or more such membranes, either sewn together edge-to-edge to form a continuous surface for writing, or laid together in a pile and sewn together at the head, and used by unrolling the membranes.
- sheet: a single sheet of parchment or paper, not intended to form part of a codex, either kept flat or folded (rather than rolled) for storage.
- faltbuch
- other
- unknown

The following may also be used:

- roll-codex
- booklet: a gathering of two or more bifolia, with a binding/covering, that appears to be complete in terms of its original textual content
- quire: a complete gathering of two or more bifolia, without a binding/covering.

```
<physDesc>
  <objectDesc form="codex">
  <!-- -->
  </objectDesc>
</physDesc>
```

1.6.4.2.1. Support Description

The `<supportDesc>` element may contain the following elements:

- <**support**> contains a description of the materials etc. which make up the physical support for the written part of a manuscript or other object.
- <**extent**> describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.
- <**foliation**> describes the numbering system or systems used to count the leaves or pages in a codex or similar object.
- <**collation**> contains a description of how the leaves, bifolia, or similar objects are physically arranged.
- <**condition**> contains a description of the physical condition of the manuscript or object.

The support material for the codicological unit(s) should be recorded in the @material attribute of <**supportDesc**>. Allowed values are: chart (for all kinds of paper), perg (for parchment and vellum), papyrus, palm (palm leaf), mixed, unknown, or other. The name of the material for display purposes, and further description of the support, should be added in the <**support**> element. For example:

```
<supportDesc material="chart">
  <support>Paper</support>
</supportDesc>
```

```
<supportDesc material="perg">
  <support>Exceptionally thick, stiff parchment</support>
</supportDesc>
```

1.6.4.2.1.1. Support

Provides a prose description of the material. For parchment, this may include comment on the quality of the parchment and its disposition. For mixed material, the nature of the combination should be described.

```
<support>Paper,
with parchment bifolia for the outer and inner
leaves of the quire.</support>
```

If the disposition of hair and flesh sides of parchment is recorded, this should be done consistently using the letters H (for hair) and F (for flesh) inside a <**term**> element with attribute @type of value disposition. If the disposition is consistent throughout the manuscript, the formula need only refer to each side of the first two leaves in a quire. For example, HFFH indicates that the hair side is on the outside of the quire, with flesh sides facing flesh sides and hair sides facing hair sides in the rest of the quire (and vice versa). By contrast, FHFH indicates that the flesh side is on the outside of the quire, with hair sides facing flesh sides and flesh sides facing hair sides in the rest of the quire (and vice versa). For irregularly arranged quires, we recommend the provision of a full formula. If the disposition varies between portions of a composite manuscript, use <**msPart**> to provide separate formulae. Formulae such as 'HSOS' (hair side outside) should be altered in retroconversion. If the disposition of parchment varies between quires or otherwise between sections of the manuscript, it should be described in the <**layout**> element, rather than in <**support**>.

```
<support>Parchment (<term type="disposition">FHHF</term>)</support>
<support>Parchment (<term type="disposition">HFHF</term>)</support>
```

Note that this convention regarding H and F differs from the usage attributed to Julian Brown, in which our HFFH would be rendered HHHH, the H in the latter case describing the recto of each leaf in the first half of the quire. If retroconverting, ensure that you have understood the original intention of the cataloguer.

If different materials are used (paper and parchment, different kinds of parchment, or different paper stocks, for example), these may be described in separate <**material**> elements.

1.6.4.2.1.1.1. Description of paper

The level of detail in which paper is described will vary: in retroconversion, according to the detail of existing descriptions; in cataloguing afresh, according to the resources available

The paper should be described inside the `<support>` element. If there are multiple paper stocks, each should be described in its own `<material>` element.

The folding of the paper should be recorded using a `<measure>` element with the `@type` attribute (value: folding) whose values will be folio, quarto, etc.

The original size of the sheet may be given using `<dimensions>` with attribute `@type` of value `paperSheet`

The number of chainlines per leaf should be recorded using a `<num>` element with `@type` of value `chainlinesLeaf`.

The distance between chainlines may be recorded using `<dimensions>` with `@type` of `chainLines`, containing a `<width>` element with `@quantity`.

1.6.4.2.1.1.1. Watermarks

Describe each watermark in the `<watermark>` element.

The key term for the motif should be encoded using the `<term>` element with attribute `@type` of value `watermarkMotif` and attribute `@key` with the relevant value from the IPH standard. Additional descriptive terms may be placed inside a `<note>` element with `@type` of `watermarkVariation`

The position of the watermark should be recorded in a `<note>` element with `@type` of `watermarkPosition`

The dimensions of the watermark may be given in a `<dimensions>` element with `@type` of `watermark`.

References to printed repertoires may be given in the format specified above at Repertoires. References to online repertoires may be given using the `<ref>` element.

Countermarks should be described using the `<countermark>` element. Note that this customization is not currently part of the TEI P5 standard.

1.6.4.2.1.1.2. Examples:

```
<watermark>
  <term key="J3/3" type="watermarkMotif">Monts/Dreiberg</term>
</watermark>
```

```
<support>
  <material>
    <locus from="1r" to="48v">Fols. 1-48</locus>,
      paper, folded in <measure>quarto</measure>; <num type="chainlinesLeaf">8</num>
      chainlines per leaf.
      <watermark>Watermark: <term type="watermarkMotif">Hand</term>,
      <note type="variation">surmounted by
        a fleuron</note>, <note type="position">on a
        chainline</note>. </watermark>
    </material>
  </support>
```

```
<support>
  <material>
    <locus from="1r" to="48v">1-48</locus>, paper,
      folded in <measure>quarto</measure>, <note type="paperType">chancery</note>;
    original size of
      the sheet <dimensions type="sheet" unit="mm">
        <height>315</height>
        <width>425</width>
      </dimensions> Chainlines: <num type="chainlinesLeaf">8</num> chainlines per
    leaf,
      <num type="chainlinesSheet">23</num> chainlines
      per sheet. <dimensions type="chainlines" unit="mm">
        <width>19</width>
      </dimensions> mm. between
      chainlines. <watermark>Watermark: <term type="watermarkMotif">Hand</term>,
```

```

<note type="watermarkVariation">surmounted by a
fleuron</note>, <note type="watermarkPosition">on
a chainline</note>
(<ref target="http://www.ksbm.oeaw.ac.at/_scripts/php/loadRepWmark.php?
rep=briquet&amp;refnr=10713&amp;lang=fr">Briquet 10713</ref>)</watermark>
</material>
<material>
<locus from="49r" to="72v">49-72</locus>, paper,
folded in <measure>folio</measure>, <note type="paperType">chancery</note>;
original size of
the sheet <dimensions type="paperSheet" unit="mm">
<height>290</height>
<width>420</width>
</dimensions>. Chainlines: <num type="chainlinesLeaf">6</num> chainlines per
leaf,
<num type="chainlinesSheet">12</num> chainlines
per sheet. <dimensions type="chainlines" unit="mm">
<width>33</width>
</dimensions> mm. between
chainlines. <watermark>Watermark: <term type="watermarkMotif">Bird</term>,
<note type="watermarkVariation">with a cross surmounted
with trefoils</note>, <note type="watermarkPosition">between
chainlines</note>
(<ref target="http://www.ksbm.oeaw.ac.at/_scripts/php/loadRepWmark.php?
amp;rep=briquet&amp;refnr=12170&amp;lang=fr">Briquet 12170</ref>)
<dimensions type="watermark" unit="mm">
<height>41</height>
<width>19</width>
</dimensions>
</watermark>
</material>
</support>

```

1.6.4.2.1.2. Extent

This should contain:

- a description of the present state of the item (if different from <objectDesc>), using <objectType>
- the number of leaves, using <num>
- measurements of the leaves, using <dimensions>

<seg> and @type may be used to separate these sections within extent, as shown below.

If the present state of the item is different from its original state, record this information within <objectType>, using the following terms:

- roll-codex = a codex in which formerly joined membranes have been separated and rebound to resemble a codex, perhaps in concertina form
- fragment = one or more remnants from a manuscript, whose survival in a form different to their original state has been accidental or an unintended consequence of their use for some other purpose not directly concerned with their original content or history (e.g. as pastedowns or sewing guards).
- cutting = a single portion of a leaf, whose removal was guided by aesthetic or other criteria of selection, with the intention of preserving it separately from the rest of the manuscript.

Where necessary (particularly in the case of fragments), further brief description may be provided after the closing <objectType> tag, using the following terms:

- quire = a complete gathering of two or more bifolia, without a binding/covering.
- bifolium = two conjoint (but not necessarily contiguous) leaves, originally or still folded vertically down the middle, perhaps removed or otherwise detached from a codex.
- leaf = a single leaf

```

<extent>
<seg type="object">
<objectType>Fragment</objectType>, comprising two
originally contiguous strips of parchment, removed
from a binding. </seg> [...]
</extent>

```

1.6.4.2.1.2.1. Number of leaves

The number of leaves within a manuscript has generally been expressed using a formula that separates endleaves from the leaves at the ‘core’ of the volume (formed by gatherings of leaves whose structure can be determined in [<collation>](#)). E.g. ii + 320 + ii (i.e. a medieval manuscript opening with two post-medieval endleaves, then 320 medieval leaves, and closing with two post-medieval endleaves).

Sometimes, a formula might distinguish between different kinds of endleaf. Example: ii + 1 + 320 + ii (i.e. a medieval manuscript opening with two post-medieval endleaves, a single medieval leaf, then 320 medieval leaves, and closing with two post-medieval endleaves).

It can sometimes be difficult to distinguish whether such leaves as that denoted by ‘+ 1’ in the above formula are original (i.e. were included in the manuscript when it was first made), contemporary (i.e. included around that time), or were added at some later juncture as part of a rebinding during the medieval period. In any case, they are not part of the quire structure.

Since this kind of endleaf may contain (for example) annotations, added texts, or information of relevance to the manuscript’s medieval provenance, or may comprise leaves recycled from another medieval manuscript (and therefore bearing text in need of identification), the current guide recommends that these endleaves be distinguished both from others that were clearly added later and from the ‘core’ leaves in a volume.

Use [<num>](#) to encode each group of leaves separately, with the attribute @value to provide the number of leaves within that group.

Use the following conventions:

- lower-case Roman numerals to refer to endleaves that were not part of the original manuscript and are demonstrably not medieval, @type=laterEndleaf
- Arabic numerals to refer to endleaves that are either original / contemporary / medieval, encoded as @type=endleaf
- Arabic numerals to refer to leaves that are the ‘core’ of the volume, encoded as: @type=leaf. (If the volume is paginated, use @type=page.)
- for rolls: Arabic numerals to refer to the number of membranes, encoded as: @type=membrane

The terms ‘medieval’ and ‘post-medieval’ have been avoided in order that it might be possible to apply the same vocabulary and encoding practice to the task of cataloguing early modern manuscripts.

```
<extent> [...] <seg type="leaf">
  <num type="laterEndleaf" value="2">ii</num> +
  <num type="endleaf" value="1">1</num> + <num type="leaf" value="320">320</num> +
  <num type="laterEndleaf" value="2">ii</num>
</seg>
</extent>
```

N.B. Note for retroconversion: catalogues do not always make it possible to distinguish endleaves from leaves. In particular, the Bodleian’s Summary Catalogue uses formulae such as “ii + 73”, where the front endleaves are enumerated (but modern / original leaves are not distinguished), but any rear endleaves are included in with the main block. In such cases mark up as follows:

```
<extent>
  <num type="endleaf" value="2">ii</num> + <num type="leaf" value="73">73</num>
</extent>
```

1.6.4.2.1.3. Leaf dimensions

Use the tag [<dimensions>](#) to encode measurements of the leaves and the attribute @type to indicate what is being measured. The following values of @type may be used:

- leaf = one or more leaves
- roll = the total dimensions of a series of sheets stitched together
- membrane = a single sheet within a roll
- fragment = a remnant of a manuscript (potentially of various kinds and not necessarily in its original form)

- cutting = a single portion of a leaf, removed from a manuscript

Round measurements to the nearest 5mm - except for single-sheet documents or fragments.

Use the attribute @unit to specify the measurement system. Dimensions should be measured in mm. when cataloguing afresh. For retroconversion, follow whichever system the catalogue has used.

Suggested values of @unit:

- mm
- cm
- inch

The @quantity attribute should be used to provide a machine-readable form of the measurement.

For a range of measurement (typically greater variation than 10mm between the leaves), use @min and @max:

```
<dimensions type="fragment" unit="mm">
  <height quantity="176">176</height>
  <width quantity="125">125</width>
</dimensions>
<dimensions type="leaf" unit="mm">
  <height max="315" min="290">290-315</height>
  <width max="180" min="160">160-180</width>
</dimensions>
```

The unit of measurement (mm., etc.) should not be expressed in prose but will be generated by the XSLT transformation.

In retroconversion, if the source catalogue uses "c.", the @precision attribute should be used. (The default value of @precision is assumed to be high.)

```
<dimensions type="leaf" unit="mm">
  <height max="315" min="290"
    precision="medium">c.
  290</height>
  <width max="180" min="160"
    precision="medium">c.
  160</width>
</dimensions>
```

If there is evidence of cropping (e.g. loss of text in the margins), record this using the attribute @cert with the value low

```
<dimensions type="leaf" unit="mm">
  <height cert="low" quantity="290">290</height>
  <width quantity="160">160</width>
</dimensions>
<note>Severely cropped in the upper
margin.</note>
```

<extent> will not presently accommodate **<locus>**. For manuscripts that are not composite, but which nonetheless contain sections (perhaps, but not necessarily a whole quire or quires) with dimensions different to others of the volume, it is not currently possible to provide separate measurements that are distinguished by folio range. These details may be recorded in a **<note>**.

For rolls, provide both the dimensions of the roll as a whole, followed by those of the membranes.

```
<dimensions type="roll" unit="mm">
  <height quantity="4425">4425</height>
  <width quantity="290">290</width>
</dimensions>
<dimensions type="membrane" unit="mm">
  <height max="255" min="220">220-255</height>
```

```
<width quantity="290">290</width>
</dimensions>
```

Since the dimensions of fragments or cuttings could interfere with quantitative analyses of leaf dimensions, it is necessary to define them separately using the values @fragment or @cutting (see [objectType](#) for definitions of these terms). Regardless of what the fragment comprises, measurements of its total dimensions should be given, to the millimetre.

```
<dimensions type="fragment" unit="mm">
  <height quantity="172">172</height>
  <width quantity="93">93</width>
</dimensions>
```

It may be possible, in some instances, to provide or infer the original dimensions of a leaf from what survives in fragmentary form. e.g. a bifolium may have been flattened to form an endleaf but was not trimmed in the process; e.g. a fragment of papyrus may contain text on the recto and verso sufficient to calculate an approximate number of lines and original size of the leaf. Use @cert to indicate where such inferences have been made, adding within [<note>](#) an explanation of the evidence.

```
<dimensions type="fragment" unit="mm">
  <height quantity="183">183</height>
  <width quantity="179">179</width>
</dimensions>
<dimensions type="leaf" unit="mm">
  <height cert="high" quantity="179">179</height>
  <width cert="high" quantity="106">106</width>
</dimensions>
<note>The fragment comprises a flattened bifolium,
trimmed along its original left-hand edge and
rotated 45 degrees anti-clockwise and inserted into
the volume as a pastedown. The right-hand edge
appears to have been left untrimmed. </note>
```

```
<dimensions type="fragment" unit="mm">
  <height quantity="81">81</height>
  <width quantity="48">48</width>
</dimensions>
<dimensions type="leaf" unit="mm">
  <height cert="low" quantity="240">240</height>
  <width cert="low" quantity="140">140</width>
</dimensions>
<note>The dimensions of the original leaf have been
inferred from the amount of text remaining on the
recto and verso and the likely space required to
copy the intervening text between the end of the
recto and the beginning of the verso. </note>
```

Measurements of the ruled and/or written spaces is often best given under [<layout>](#). However, it is recognised that in printed catalogues, these measurements usually follow immediately on from measurements of leaf size (usually in brackets). In order to accommodate the continuation of this practice, and assist in retroconversion, the present guide accepts that it may be desirable to give measurements of ruled and/or written spaces under [<extent>](#). Follow the practices as outlined above, using the attribute @type with the values ruled or written as appropriate.

Concluding examples:

```
<extent>
  <seg type="leaf">
    <num type="later_endleaf" value="4">iv</num> +
    <num type="leaf" value="288">288</num> +
    <num type="later_endleaf" value="2">ii</num>
  </seg>
  <seg type="dimensions">
    <dimensions type="leaf" unit="mm">
```

```

<height quantity="350">350</height>
<width quantity="245">245</width>
</dimensions>
</seg>
</extent>

```

```

<extent>
  <seg type="object">
    <objectType>Cutting</objectType>, of a large
    historiated initial. </seg>
  <seg type="leaf">
    <num type="leaf">1</num>
  </seg>
  <seg type="dimensions">
    <dimensions type="fragment" unit="mm">
      <height quantity="334">334</height>
      <width quantity="291">291</width>
    </dimensions>
    <dimensions type="leaf" unit="mm">
      <height cert="high" quantity="680">680</height>
      <width cert="high" quantity="450">450</width>
    </dimensions>
    <note>The cutting was removed from Florence,
      Bibliotheca Laurenziana, Cod. Corale 2, from which
      total leaf dimensions have been taken.</note>
  </seg>
</extent>

```

1.6.4.2.2. Foliation

The **<foliation>** element is used to provide information about the systems used to number the folios or pages in the manuscript. It should record where and in what medium the numbers are written, and when this was done, and the sequence of those numbers. Where multiple systems have been used these can be referred to elsewhere if @xml:id attributes are used. For example:

```

<foliation xml:id="original">
  <p>Original foliation in red Arab numerals in the outer
  margin of each recto</p>
</foliation>
<foliation xml:id="modern">
  <p>Additional pagination in pencil in <locus from="1b" to="67a">ff. 1b-
  67a</locus>
  </p>
</foliation>

```

The dating attributes @notBefore, @notAfter and (less probably) @when may be used if desired to (note: this is a customization and not currently part of the TEI P5 standard).

```

<foliation notAfter="1500" notBefore="1400">Fifteenth-century foliation in roman
numerals.</foliation>

```

The **<fw>** element can be used to describe running heads. For example:

```

<foliation>
  <p>
    <fw place="left" type="pag" xml:lang="bo">Has pagination
    in Tibetan</fw>
    <fw place="left" type="sig" xml:lang="bo">¤~</fw>
  </p>
</foliation>

```

1.6.4.2.3. Collation

The collation formula should be given inside the `<formula>` element.

The `@mainStructures` attribute (a customization not currently part of the TEI P5 standard) may be used to record the most frequently occurring quire structure(s). The value of the attribute should be the number of leaves in the most frequently-occurring structure(s). A single value indicates that the given quire structure occurs in approximately 80% or more of quires. Multiple values indicate that the given structures in combination account for approximately 80% or more of quires; the most frequently-occurring structure should be placed first.

```
<collation mainStructures="8">
  <formula>I-XXII(8),
    XXIII(3)</formula>
</collation>
<collation mainStructures="12 16">
  <formula>I(14),
    II-III(12), IV(16), V-VI(12), VII(16), VIII-XI(12),
    XII(16), XIII(12), XIV(16), XV(10), XVI(16),
    XVII(13)</formula>
</collation>
```

The `<formula>` element should be used for brief collation formulae. For more detailed formulae, use the `<list>` element with attribute `@type` of value `collationFormula`.

```
<collation>
  <list type="collationFormula">
    <item>2 modern paper endleaves</item>
    <item>1 medieval endleaf</item>
    <item>Quire 1<hi rend="superscript">6</hi> (fols
      1-6)</item>
    <item>Quire 2<hi rend="superscript">8</hi> (fols
      7-14)</item>
    <item>Quire 3<hi rend="superscript">10</hi> (fols
      15-24)</item>
    <item>Quire 4<hi rend="superscript">12</hi> (fols
      25-36)</item>
    <item>2 modern paper endleaves</item>
  </list>
</collation>
<!-- todo: this should be regarded as a temporary solution? --&gt;</pre>
```

Record quire or leaf signatures in the `<signatures>` element. Use the attribute `@type` to distinguish leaf and quire signatures. (NB this is a customization and not currently part of the TEI standard.)

- leaf: the description refers to leaf or bifolium signatures (usually located in the lower right-hand corner of the recto side of the leaves in the first half of a quire, usually in alphanumerical sequence).
- quire: the description refers to quire signatures or numbers, usually on the verso of the last leaf of the quire, or sometimes the recto of the first leaf, which assign a sequence of numbers, letters or a combination thereof to the sequence of quires.

```
<signatures type="leaf">Bifolium signatures, a-k,
accompanying Roman numerals, on Quires 1-10; none
thereafter.</signatures>
<signatures type="quire">Quires numbered 1-12 in a
sixteenth-century hand.</signatures>
```

Record the catchwords in the `<catchwords>` element.

For [multi-part manuscripts](#), the collation of each part should be recorded separately. In retroconversion this is likely to involve reorganization of the formula.

1.6.4.2.4. Condition

Provide a brief description of the overall condition of the manuscript: detached, loose, torn, mutilated or otherwise damaged leaves; flaking ink or pigments or 'bleed-through'; deliberate damage inflicted upon decorative elements; post-medieval 'touching up' of the text or decoration; damp, creasing or anything else that affects the colouration of the parchment or paper or affects the legibility of the text; weak joints, detached boards, loose headbands and other damage to bindings. It is not necessary to repeat information about excised / missing / cancelled leaves or gatherings that has already been provided under <**collation**>. If there is a large quantity of information to record, use <**p**> to separate it into paragraphs.

```
<condition>
  <p>Several of the miniatures have been rubbed and the
    pigments smudged (<locus from="10v" to="10v">10v</locus>,
  <locus from="26v" to="26v">26v</locus>, <locus from="30v" to="30v">30v</locus>,
  <locus from="33v" to="33v">33v</locus>, <locus from="44v" to="44v">44v</locus>,
  <locus from="51v" to="51v">51v</locus>) .</p>
  <p>Pigments have also flaked away in places
  (<locus from="10v" to="10v">10v</locus>, <locus from="59v" to="51v">59v</locus>)
  and transferred to facing
  leaves (<locus from="44v" to="45r">44v-45r</locus>) .</p>
</condition>
```

1.6.4.3. Layout Description

The layout section (which might more fully be called 'layout and preparation of the page') should be used to record: written and/or ruled space (but see also under Extent); number of columns and number of written and/or ruled lines; how and according to what pattern ruling was executed; whether the writing is 'above' or 'below' top line; and evidence for pricking of the page. This section comprises one or more <**layout**> elements inside the <**layoutDesc**> element.

If desired, the <**seg**> element may be used to divide the content of a <**layout**> element, using attribute @type to label the sections, suggested values ruling, pricking.

Give the number of columns and ruled lines in the <**layout**> element using the @columns and @ruledLines or @writtenLines attribute. If the number of columns and/or written or ruled lines varies give the minimum and maximum values with whitespace in-between.

In retroconversion: if a varying number of lines and/or columns is given, but a typical number is specified, encode the typical number in the attributes.

```
<layout columns="2">1-10 cols. (typically 2)</layout>
```

Give the height and width of the writing area in mm (with 5 mm precision) in the <**dimensions**> element (@type attribute with value written, preceding this with the explanatory text 'written space').

```
<layout columns="1" writtenLines="30">30 long lines; written
space <dimensions type="written" unit="mm">
  <height quantity="290">290</height>
  <width quantity="160">160</width>
</dimensions>
</layout>
<layoutDesc>
  <layout columns="1" ruledLines="28">28 lines ruled in pale
  brown ink, with single vertical bounding lines,
  extending the full height of the page, ruled on the
  flesh side of the leaves with an instrument which
  produced a scored line, but also often left a brown
  'crayon' trace. <seg type="pricking">
  <hi rend="smallicaps">PRICKINGS</hi> are often visible
  in the upper and lower margins, and in the outer
  margin c.7 mm. below the bottom ruled
```

```

    line.</seg>
  </layout>
</layoutDesc>

```

In most descriptions, you need only provide a count of the number of written lines. If there is a discernible difference between the number of lines ruled and the number of lines written, use both @ruledLines and @writtenLines in order to differentiate.

There is as yet no straightforward means of recording the varying dimensions of columns and intercolumnar margins for the more complex, multi-column layouts such as those found in glossed books. Give a prose description instead.

Record the written (and/or ruled) space in the `<dimensions>` element with @type of written/ruled as appropriate.

The description of the ruling type may be according to: a printed repertory (use the standard markup for repertoria); a verbal description; the formula established by D. Muzerelle, *De re rigatoria* [<http://www.palaeographia.org/muzerelle/index.htm>]. In the latter case the formula should be enclosed in a `<formula>` element with attribute @notation of value Muzerelle

```

<layoutDesc>
  <layout columns="2" writtenLines="24 52">
    <locus from="29r" scheme="folios" to="30v">Fols.
      29r-30v</locus>: written space <dimensions type="written">
        <height quantity="165" unit="mm">165</height>
        <width quantity="115" unit="mm">115</width>
      </dimensions>
      <note>Main text always 24 lines per page. In the
          commentary surrounding the main text there around
          twice as many lines per page.</note>
    </layout>
  </layoutDesc>
  <layout columns="1"
    rulingMedium="leadpoint" topLine="above" writtenLines="25">25 long lines.
  <seg type="pricking">Pricked in the outer margins.</seg> Ruled in leadpoint;
  ruling often very faint, with double vertical bounding lines
  extending the full height of the page, and the first, third,
  twenty-third and twenty-fifth horizontal lines extending the
  full width of the page (Muzerelle,
  <ref target="http://www.palaeographia.org/muzerelle/mastara.htm">Mastara</ref>,
  formula <formula notation="Muzerelle">2-2/0/101-101/J</formula>). Written above
  top line.
  Written space <dimensions type="written" unit="mm">
    <height max="125" min="115">c. 115-125</height>
    <width max="85" min="75">75-85</width>
  </dimensions>
</layout>

```

If the layout varies between different sections of the manuscript, use separate `<layout>` elements to record this.

1.6.4.4. Description of Hands

Each distinct hand and/or script in the codicological unit should be described in a separate `<handNote>` element in the `<handDesc>` element. The `<handDesc>` element itself has an attribute @hands which can be used to record the number of hands identified. This is optional but recommended. The value of the attribute should be the number of hands involved in the original production of the manuscripts and should not include later additions or annotations.

The `<handNote>` element may have an @xml:id attribute with the values hand-1, hand-2 etc, numbered in the order of appearance in the manuscript. If the same hand occurs in another unit the attribute @sameAs may be used with a reference to the @xml:id of that `<handNote>`.

The folios where the hand occurs should be specified and may be encoded using the `<locus>` or `<locusGrp>` element. Where the scribe is identifiable, either from the writing or a subscription, give the

name in a `<persName>` element using the `@key` attribute pointing to the persons authority file, and the `@role` attribute with value scr.

The `@scope` attribute can be used to indicate the extent of the hand's appearance in the manuscript. Its values can be one of:

- sole
- major
- minor

The `@script` attribute may be used to provide a high-level classification of the script. Suggested values in Western manuscripts are:

- capitalsSquare
- capitalsRustic
- uncial
- halfUncial
- minusculeInsular
- minusculeVernacular (use for English vernacular minuscule / Anglo-Saxon minuscule)
- minusculeCaroline (use for both English and continental variants of the script)
- minuscule (other forms of minuscule: Beneventan, Luxeui, etc.)
- protogothic ('praegothica')
- textualisNorthern
- textualisSouthern
- semitextualis
- cursivaAntiquior ('anglicana', 'anglicana formata', etc.)
- cursiva ('cancelleresca', 'bastarda', 'lettre batarde', 'secretary')
- hybrida ('semihybrida', 'loopless bastarda', 'fractura', 'mercantesca')
- gothicAntiqua ('fere-humanistica', 'gothicco-humanistica')
- humanisticaTextualis
- humanisticaSemitextualis
- humanisticaCursiva

The classification for early scripts is based on Brown (1990) with modifications, for Gothic scripts on Derolez (2003), for humanistic scripts on Derolez (2011).

In Islamicate manuscripts suggested `@script` values are:

- muhaqqaq
- rayhani
- naskh
- maghribi
- bihari
- nasta_liq
- thuluth
- tawqi_
- riqqa_
- ghubar
- ta_liq
- diwani
- ruq_ah
- siyaqah
- unknown

For further levels of classification the `<term>` element with `@type` of script may be used.

```
<handDesc hands="1">
  <handNote script="cursivaAntiquior">Written in
  <term type="script">anglicana</term> by a single
    scribe.</handNote>
</handDesc>
```

Punctuation should be described in the `<handNote>` element. Use the `<term>` element with attribute `@type` of value punctuation to mark up particular types of punctuation, if desired.

```
<handNote>Written in gothic <term type="script">textura  
quadrata</term>. Punctuation by <term type="punctuation">point</term> and  
<term type="punctuation">double  
point</term>.</handNote>
```

1.6.4.5. Musical Notation

Musical notation should be described in a `<p>` element in the `<musicNotation>` element with a `<locus>` element. Multiple types of notation should appear in separate `<p>` elements.

```
<musicNotation>  
  <p>8 long staves with square notation</p>  
</musicNotation>
```

1.6.4.6. Description of the Decoration

The `<decoDesc>` element contains a description of the decoration in the manuscript or codicological unit, together with other ‘decorative’ aspects of the presentation of the text such as rubrication. It can only contain the elements `<p>`, `<summary>`, and `<decoNote>`.

Within the tag `<decoDesc>`, use `<decoNote>` to provide a hierarchical breakdown of the decoration in the manuscript, in the order given in the following table, with the appropriate values of `@type` attribute.

Miniatures, listed in the following order: full-page, half-page, small, column	miniature
Bas-de-page scenes	bas-de-page
Borders, in the following order: historiated, other	border
Diagram	diagram
Map	map
Headpiece	headpiece
Canon table	canonTable
Carpet page	carpetPage
Historiated initials (i.e., containing an identifiable narrative scene) (Brown: historiated initial)	histInit
decorated initials (Brown: decorated initial, anthropomorphic initial, zoomorphic initial, gymnastic initial, inhabited initial).	decoInit
coloured initials	collInit
initials with penwork flourishing (Reallexikon zur Deutschen Kunstgeschichte: fleuronné) (Brown: pen-flourished initial, littera florissa). Also use for so-called arabesque initials.	flourInit
chrysography (i.e. writing in gold)	chrysography
plain initials	plainInit
Line fillers	lineFill
cadels	cadel
instructions	instructions
Spaces left for decoration	unfilled
None (if an existing decoration being retro-converted specifies this)	none
rubrication	rubrication

In Fihrist, the following values for the `@type` attribute should be used:

- border
- diagram
- frieze
- illustration
- initial
- map

- marginal
- miniature
- mixed
- other
- paratext
- printmark
- publishmark
- rubrication
- secondary
- tooling
- unspecified
- unwan
- vignette

Artists should be identified using the `<persName>` element with `@role = art` and `@key` referring to the persons authority file.

```
<decoDesc>
  <decoNote type="miniature">
    <p>Two full-page miniatures, framed by green, blue,
       orange, ochre or pink panels linked by gold
       quadrilobes and surrounded by short black sprays
       terminating in gold disks and ivy leaves.</p>
    <p>The second miniature is signed 'Willelmus de monte
       acuto me fecit' by the artist <persName key="person_1234" role="art">William
       Montague (fl.
       1390s?) (locus from="37r" to="37r">37r</locus>).</persName>
    </p>
  </decoNote>
</decoDesc>
```

To provide a more structured entry in the case of detailed descriptions of decoration, use the `<list>`, `<head>`, and `<item>` elements.

```
<!-- abbreviated from MS. Buchanan e. 10 --><decoNote type="histInit">
<list>
  <head>Two five-line historiated initials:</head>
  <item>
    <locus from="19v" to="19v">(fol. 19v)</locus>
      Obsecro te. Virgin and Child enthroned; the Virgin
      holding a red fruit(?).</item>
  <item>
    <locus from="23r" to="23r">(fol. 23r)</locus> O
      intemerata. Pietà. </item>
  </list>
</decoNote>
<decoNote type="decInit">Four- or three-line initials in blue
and red, enclosing foliage, on a gold ground, at the start
of each text with a large miniature; two-line initials in
gold, on a blue and red ground with white tracery, to
psalms, capitula, lessons, etc. and the KL monograms in the
calendar; similar one-line initials to verses and other
minor divisions; similar line-fillers throughout.</decoNote>
```

The subjects of miniatures can be classified using the `<term>` element with attribute `@type` of value iconography. The `@ref` attribute can be used to point to a thesaurus, such as [Iconclass](#).

```
<decoNote type="histInit">
<list>
  <head>One six-line historiated initial: </head>
  <item>
    <locus from="49r" to="49r">(fol. 49r)</locus>
      Hours of the Virgin, Lauds. <term ref="http://www.iconclass.org/rkd/73A6"
      type="iconography">Visitation</term>. </item>
```

```
</list>
</decoNote>
```

Aspects of the manuscript relating to the presentation of the text - notably rubrication - should also be included in the `<decoDesc>` element (rather than in the `<layout>` element, using `<decoNote>` with attribute `@type` of value rubrication).

1.6.4.7. Additions

Marginalia, notes, and other additions of interest should usually be recorded in the `<additions>` element, inside one or more `<p>` or `<note>` elements. The `<note>` element can have the `@type` and `@subtype` attributes. Use `<locus>` to specify the location of these features.

If the language of the marginalia is significant (e.g., Latin marginalia in a Greek manuscript), the marginalia will need to be recorded as an additional text using `<msItem>` in `<msContents>`.

```
<msItem xml:id="MS_Auct_T_2_6-item2">
  <note subtype="gloss" type="additions">Marginal and interlinear
    Latin glosses.</note>
  <textLang mainLang="la">Latin</textLang>
</msItem>
```

1.6.4.8. Binding Description

The binding should be described in one or more paragraphs (`<p>`) in a `<binding>` element inside the `<bindingDesc>` element. The standard dating attributes should be used on the `<binding>` element if information about the date of the binding is available.

The following order may be followed in the description:

- covering material and coverage (full, half, quarter; textile; limp vellum; treasure)
- chemise (alum-tawed, textile)
- board material (wooden boards, pasteboard)
- tooling patterns (blind, gold)
- spine covering and tooling, incl. labels
- metalwork fittings (plates, plaques, enamels, bosses, cornerpieces, strap and pin, clasps, chain staples).
- inlaid/inset plaques
- labels (esp. horn-plaques)

Key elements of the description may be marked with the `<term>` with relevant `@type` attribute and with attribute `@ref` referring to the appropriate URI in the Ligatus thesaurus.

Give the height, width and depth of the binding may be given in mm (with 5 mm precision) in the `<dimensions>` element (`@type` attribute with value binding).

A description of decorative features on the binding can be recorded in one or more `<decoNote>` elements (note that this needs to be outside the `<p>` element as a child of `<binding>`)

Use the `<condition>` element to record repairs to the binding, such as rebacking.

Fore-edge painting or decoration should be described inside a `<decoDesc>` element, in a `<decoNote>` element with attribute `@type` of value foreedge.

Bookmarks and other page markers should be described in a separate paragraph in the binding section, using where possible the vocabulary of the Ligatus thesaurus, and linking to that vocabulary using the `<term>` element with attribute `@type` of value bookmark and relevant `@ref` attribute.

```
<bindingDesc>
  <binding notAfter="1700" notBefore="1600">
    <p>Light brown <term ref="http://w3id.org/lob/concept/1238">
```

```

      type="material">calfskin</term> over paste-laminate boards,
      leather label on spine with title and shelfmark
      tooled in gold, gauffered fore-edges. 17th
      century.</p>
    <condition>Rebacked.</condition>
    <p>
      <term ref="http://www.ligatus.org.uk/lob/concept/2945"
            type="bookmark">Leaf tab markers</term>.</p>
    </binding>
  </bindingDesc>

```

Evidence of former bindings, or the reuse of earlier binding material in a modern binding, should be recorded in a separate `<binding>` element.

Note that all the above may require restructuring of an original description during retroconversion.

```

<bindingDesc>
  <binding notAfter="1900" notBefore="1600">
    <p>Sewing not visible; tightly rebound between
      19th-century pasteboards, reusing earlier panels
      (see below); the centre of each cover inlaid with a
      17th-century oval medallion of red leather tooled in
      gilt (perhaps replacing the identifying mark of a
      previous owner); the spine similarly tooled, without
      raised bands or title-piece (similar in design to
      <hi rend="italic">ibid</hi>. pl. XIXa); coloured
      endbands; the edges of the leaves and boards gilt.
      Boxed.</p>
  </binding>
  <binding notAfter="1590" notBefore="1580">
    <p>The binding re-uses panels of 16th-century brown
      leather with gilt tooling <foreign rend="italic">à
      la fanfare</foreign>, Paris c. 1580-90, in the
      style associated with Clovis Eve (of the bindings
      ill. in Hobson, <title>Les reliures à la
      fanfare</title>, the boards are closest in general
      design to pl. XXI b).</p>
  </binding>
</bindingDesc>

```

1.6.4.9. Seals

The `<sealDesc>` element supplies information about the seals attached to documents. It can either contain a text description in `<p>` tags, or any number of `<seal>` elements. These can be numbered using `@n` attributes.

The seal impression of stamps of ownership may be described in `<decoDesc>`, in stylistic and decorative terms, or in `<provenance>` as regards its textual content.

1.6.4.10. Accompanying material

The `<accMat>` element may be used for brief descriptions of endleaves, waste leaves and similar material that are not part of the ‘original’ codex but were supplied during a binding process. If a detailed codicological description is required, use `<msPart>`

Use `<p>` to split up descriptions of multiple materials, and `<locus>` to identifying their locations.

1.6.5. History

The `<history>` element should include information about the origin, provenance and acquisition of the manuscript.

1.6.5.1. Origin

In the `<origin>` element specify date (`<origDate>`) and place (`<origPlace>`) (if known) of the manuscript's production. If not known, state this in a `<p>` element. Do not enclose a statement such as "No date" or "n.d." with `<origDate>` tags.

1.6.5.1.1. origDate

Dating attributes from the set @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to and @when MUST be used for `<origDate>`

@from and @to denote a known period of writing, presumed to be more or less continuous, beginning at one date and ending at another. @notBefore and @notAfter denote the terminus a quo and terminus ad quem within which the writing is believed to have occurred.

The values of those attributes are a date, starting with the year, then the month, then the day, separated by hyphens (but most often just a year, always expressed using four-digits) must be in the Gregorian calendar. the @calendar attribute records the calendar system used by the expression of the date in the text enclosed by the `<origDate>` tags. The text is for display, the attributes are the machine-readable interpretation. For example:

```
<origDate calendar="#Hijri-qamari"
  when="1684">1096
AH</origDate>
```

In retroconversion, the values given to the element and its attributes should reflect the conventions of the particular catalogue as expressed in the catalogue or, if necessary, as inferred by the encoder. (If inferred, a note to this effect may be added in `<encodingDesc>`.)

```
<origDate notAfter="1025" notBefore="1000">s. xi<hi rend="superscript">in</hi>
</origDate>
```

Values used in the Bodleian medieval catalogue (intended to capture the usage of the Summary Catalogue and Paecht and Alexander) are as follows:

Early 14th century	1300-1310
Mid 14th century	1340-1360
Late 14th century	1390-1400
14th century, first quarter	1300-1325

Etc.

Values of dating attributes should be inclusive, i.e. 1000-1050, not 1001-1050 or 1000-1049.

The attribute @evidence MAY be used to indicate the evidence for dating and localization. It is assumed that this will usually be equivalent to conjecture. If there is reasonable certainty about the dating or localization (the manuscript is 'dated or datable') this SHOULD be indicated using the attribute @cert with value high, and the nature of the evidence may be specified with the @evidence attribute.

In retroconversion, authoritative sources may differ regarding the date (or origin) of a manuscript. This can also be recorded using multiple `<origDate>` elements. (The @resp attribute may be used on the element to indicate responsibility in a machine-readable way).

```
<origDate calendar="Gregorian"
  notAfter="1300" notBefore="1290">13th century, end (Hutter)</origDate>
or
<origDate calendar="Gregorian"
  notAfter="1325" notBefore="1300">14th century, first quarter
(Palau)</origDate>
```

For manuscripts with significant later additions, textual or decorative, use additional `<origDate>` elements with @type of additions

```
<origDate calendar="Gregorian"
  notAfter="1225" notBefore="1200">13th century, first quarter</origDate>

<origDate calendar="Gregorian"
  notAfter="1500" notBefore="1400" type="additions">additions, 15th
century</origDate>
```

```
<origDate calendar="Gregorian" cert="high"
  when="1488">1488
(fols. 126-208)</origDate>
<origDate calendar="Gregorian" cert="high"
  notAfter="1488" notBefore="1464">1464 × 1488 (fol. 1-125v)</origDate>
```

1.6.5.1.2. origPlace

The content of `<origPlace>` should where possible be structured in the order (where relevant), country, settlement, institution. These should be marked up using the `<country>`, `<settlement>`, and `<org>` elements, which MUST have attributes @key linking to the places authority file. Or, in catalogues such as Fihrist which have a subjects authority file instead of a places one, the @key attribute should be "subject_" followed by the Library of Congress Name Authority identifier (e.g. "subject_n12345678").

There MUST be a country or country-like entity (see below), inside a `<country>` tag, if the `<origPlace>` element is used.

In Western manuscripts, countries of origin are typically expressed with reference to modern countries with some exceptions. Examples: England, France, Spain, Italy, Germany, Austria, Switzerland, but Bohemia, Dalmatia, Serbia, Flanders.

For manuscripts with significant later additions, textual or decorative, use additional `<origPlace>` elements with @type of additions

```
<origPlace>
  <country key="place_1000070">French</country>,
  <region key="place_7024267">Brittany</region>
</origPlace>
<origPlace type="additions">additions,
  <country key="place_7002445">England</country>
</origPlace>
```

For manuscripts produced in more than one place (or, where there is more than one potential place of origin), use multiple `<origPlace>` elements, with the @cert attribute if necessary.

```
<origPlace cert="low">
  <country key="place_1000080">Italian (?)</country>
</origPlace> or
<origPlace cert="low">
  <country key="place_1000070">French</country>,
  <region>South</region> (?)
</origPlace>
```

1.6.5.2. Provenance

Record the different stages in the provenance in one or more `<provenance>` elements.

There are different conventions for the presentation of provenance evidence. Recommended best practice in these guidelines (which may involve some restructuring of material in the case of retroconversion) is that where possible each provenance event should occur in its own `<provenance>` element, which should have relevant dating attributes (@when, @notBefore, etc.). (They may alternatively contain `<date>` elements with those attributes.) As elsewhere, @from and @to denote a known period, presumed to be more or less continuous, beginning at one date and ending at another. @notBefore and @notAfter denote the terminus a quo and terminus ad quem within which the writing is believed to have occurred. @when denotes a single event (such as a dated signature or the donation of an item to a library). People involved in the transfer of ownership should be marked up with `<persName>` tags, with a @role attribute (a [Library of Congress relator code](#), usually "fmo" for former owner).

Pressmarks and shelfmarks should be recorded in a `<q>` element with attribute @type, value pressmark; see [1.3.10. Quotations from the manuscript](#). It is not necessary to mark up pressmarks and shelfmarks which are already recorded as manuscript identifiers.

```
<acquisition notAfter="1468">At the head of f. iii<hi rend="superscript">v</hi> is  
'Liber domus scolarium de  
Merton ex dono magistro <persName key="person_2899" role="fmo dnr">Hamondi  
Haydok</persName>  
incathenandus in libraria anno Domini  
m<hi rend="superscript">mo</hi>cccc<hi rend="superscript">o</hi>lxviii<hi rend="su  
perscript">o</hi>, in the same  
hand as Wyght's <foreign>ex dono</foreign> in MS 38. For  
Hammond Haydok, see MS 16. On the front pastedown is a brief  
table of contents, s. xvii, and <q type="pressmark">N. 3.  
13. Art:</q>, canc. and replaced with 'A. 1. 10 (XXXIX)'  
in red. The College bookplate. At the head of f. i is <q>M.  
A. 2. 5</q>, s. xvii. '13' is inked on the  
foredge.</acquisition>
```

1.6.5.3. Acquisition

The `<acquisition>` element should describe the last stage of the manuscript's history, i.e. how it was acquired by its present owners. It SHOULD have relevant dating attributes. Because the present owner, location etc. of the manuscript are recorded elsewhere in the manuscript description, it is NOT necessary to encode them using `<orgName>` or `<persName>` elements.

Note the usage of the different dating attributes in the following example.

```
<provenance notAfter="1833">  
  <persName key="person_2854" role="fmo">William Wilson</persName>, F.S.A.  
(-1832?), of the Minories, his sale, Christie's, 31 Jan.-1  
Feb. 1833, lot 56 on 1 Feb.; bought by Thorpe for £53.  
11s.  
</provenance>  
<provenance from="1833" to="1834">Purchased from Thorpe by  
  <persName key="person_69848690" role="fmo">Douce</persName>, Feb. 1833.  
</provenance>  
<acquisition when="1834">Bequeathed by Douce to the Bodleian in  
1834.</acquisition>
```

1.6.6. Additional

The `<additional>` element is used to provide: information about the source of the description; information about the availability and custodial history of the manuscript; information about surrogates; bibliography; and links to online resources.

1.6.6.1. Record source and history

The `<source>` element, contained in `<recordHist>`, provides a prose description of the source(s) from which the description has been derived; this information will overlap with the information in `<respStmt>`.

It may contain `<listBibl>` and `<bibl>` elements.

```
<adminInfo>
  <recordHist>
    <source>Description adapted (2018) from the
      following sources: <listBibl>
        <bibl>
          <title>The Douce Legacy</title> (1984), no.
            244</bibl>
        <bibl>Pächt and Alexander</bibl>
        <bibl>S. J. P. Van Dijk, <title>Handlist of the
          Latin Liturgical Manuscripts in the Bodleian
          Library Oxford : Vol. 2: Office Books</title>
          (typescript, 1957)</bibl>
      </listBibl> Additional description of content and
      decoration by Matthew Holford, March 2018.
      Previously described in the Summary Catalogue. <listBibl>
        <bibl facs="aaz0626.gif" type="SC">Summary
          Catalogue, vol. 4, p. 607</bibl>
        <bibl facs="aaz0627.gif" type="SC">Summary
          Catalogue, vol. 4, p. 608</bibl>
      </listBibl>
    </source>
  </recordHist>
</adminInfo>
```

1.6.6.2. Availability

The `<availability>` element can be used to supply information about the availability of a manuscript, using the `@status` attribute. Valid values for status are free, unknown, restricted, offsite, exhibition. It may also contain information about the images or text, such as any restrictions on their use or distribution, their copyright status, etc.

1.6.6.3. Custodial History

The `<custodialHist>` element can be used to describe a manuscript's custodial history (e.g. conservation, exhibitions) either as prose tagged with `<p>` elements, or as a series of custodial events, using the `<custEvent>` element with attributes `@type`, `@when`, etc.

1.6.6.4. Surrogates

The `<surrogates>` element, which follows `<recordHist>`, is used to link to digital or other facsimiles where these are hosted independently from the catalogue. The structure of a typical entry is shown below. The `@subtype` attribute on the `<bibl>` element has the values full, where a manuscript has been digitized in full, or partial, where only selected items are available.

```
<surrogates>
  <bibl subtype="full"
    type="digital-facsimile">
    <ref target="https://digital.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/inquire/p/34a6037b-12e8-4b12-
    8920-26c33914fe0e">
      <title>Digital Bodleian</title>
    </ref>
    <note>(full digital facsimile)</note>
  </bibl>
</surrogates>
```

Note, when linking to Digital Bodleian, do not use the "permalink" in the right-hand panel. This is a link to a specific page. Instead, click the "iiif" button, copy the long string of letters, numbers and hyphens between "manifest/" and ".json" from your browser's location bar, and paste it after "https://digital.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/inquire/p/" into the target attribute in your TEI file, as in the above

example. That ensures the TEI record is associated with the entire manuscript in Digital Bodleian, and allows it to reciprocate the link back to the catalogue web site automatically.

1.6.6.5. Bibliography

The bibliography of works referring to the manuscript should be recorded in the **<additional>** element in a **<listBibl>** element. In the Bodleian medieval catalogue only major printed descriptions or reproductions of the manuscript are listed here; other items should be recorded in the Zotero bibliography. The works should be listed in a chronological order, with the most recent item first.

This section is also used to provide links to online resources such as Pinakes, Trismegistos, JONAS etc. Online resources are placed in a separate **<listBibl>** element with the heading **<head>** 'Online resources':

```
<additional>
  <listBibl type="WRAPPER">
    <listBibl type="PRINT">
      <head>Printed descriptions:</head>
      <bibl>
        <title>The Douce Legacy</title> (1984), no.
          65</bibl>
        <bibl>A. G. Watson, <title>Catalogue of Dated and
          Datable Manuscripts c.435-1600 in Oxford
          Libraries</title> (Oxford, 1984), no. 464</bibl>
        <bibl>Otto Pächt and J. J. G. Alexander,
          <title>Illuminated Manuscripts in the Bodleian
          Library Oxford</title>, III (1973), no. 469</bibl>
      </listBibl>
      <listBibl type="INTERNET">
        <head>Online resources:</head>
        <bibl>
          <ref target="http://jonas.irht.cnrs.fr/manuscrit/40258">
            <title>JONAS: Répertoire des textes et des
              manuscrits médiévaux d'oc et
              d'oïl</title>
          </ref>
        </bibl>
      </listBibl>
    </listBibl>
  </additional>
```

<additional> groups additional information, combining bibliographic information about a manuscript or other object, or surrogate copies of it, with curatorial or administrative information. **<recordHist>** (recorded history) provides information about the source and revision status of the parent manuscript or object description itself.

<source> describes the original source for the information contained with a manuscript or object description.

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc.

<custodialHist> (custodial history) contains a description of a manuscript or other object's custodial history, either as running prose or as a series of dated custodial events.

<surrogates> contains information about any representations of the manuscript or other object being described which may exist in the holding institution or elsewhere.

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

1.6.7. Multi-part, composite and similar units.

For multi-part manuscripts or in other cases where a 'syntactical' description (Andrist et al., 2013) is required, the **<msPart>** element should be used. These guidelines recommend the use of **<msPart>** for:

- manuscripts originally separate, bound together at later dates
- manuscripts with added codicological units
- palimpsest manuscripts

- re-used papyrus
- manuscripts with replacement leaves
- description of endleaves, in cases where a detailed description is required (for short descriptions of endleaves, use `<accMat>`)

The definition and understanding of composite manuscripts varies between different codicological traditions. The Western tradition has typically understood a composite manuscript to be composed of more than one combined production/usage unit. (For this terminology see Kwakkel 2002). Manuscripts with separate-but-contemporaneous production units, that were not also at some point separate usage units, are not typically catalogued as composite, although the different production units are usually noted in the description. (For a recent example, see Hanna and Rundle, *Cat. Christ Church MSS.*, MS. 92.)

The use of `<msPart>` is not recommended for describing added text or decoration where this has been added on the original codicological unit as a supplement to existing text (rather than, as with a palimpsest, as a replacement for that text). In those cases, use of multiple `<origDate>` and/or `<origPlace>` elements is recommended; see above.

For composite manuscripts, each codicological unit should be described in a separate `<msPart>` element using the following elements:

- `<msIdentifier>` (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript or similar object being described.
- `<msContents>` (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items.
- `<physDesc>` (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the `model.physDescPart` class.
- `<history>` groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object.

Endleaves should be described using one or more `<msPart>` elements following the `<msDesc>` element which contains the description of the main manuscript.

The element `<msFrag>` should not be used for this purpose. This element is used for describing manuscripts that have been 'virtually reconstructed' and is not currently used in this project.

Each codicological unit should be labelled using arabic numerals (or according to the convention of the existing catalogue in the case of retroconversion) inside the `<idno>` in the `<altIdentifier>` element inside the `<msIdentifier>` element. The folios comprising the unit should be given.

```
<msPart>
<msIdentifier>
<altIdentifier>
  <idno type="part">Manuscript I = fols 1-134</idno>
</altIdentifier>
</msIdentifier>
</msPart>
```

The data structure of the `<msPart>` element assumes that codicological units follow one another sequentially in the manuscript, which (in the case of Western manuscripts) is often but not universally true. In cases where one unit is inserted in the middle of another, the description should be organized to deal with each part in sequential order.

```
<msPart>
<msIdentifier>
<altIdentifier>
  <idno>Merton College MS. 13 - Part I (fols. 3-13,
  198-243)</idno>
</altIdentifier>
</msIdentifier>
<msContents>
  <textLang mainLang="la">Latin</textLang>
  <msItem n="1">
    <locus>(fols. 3-13v)</locus>
```

```

<title type="desc">Draft sermons</title>
<!-- ... -->
</msItem>
<msItem>
<note>For items 2, 51-4 see Part II.</note>
<note>For items 3-50 see Part III.</note>
</msItem>
<msItem n="55">
<locus>(fol. 198-208v)</locus>
<title type="desc">Eight sermons on Ioh. 17: 1-26,
extracted from <persName key="person_66806872">
<role="aut">Augustine</persName>, <title key="work_822">Tractatus in Iohannis
Euang.</title>, 104. 2 - 111. 6</title>
</msItem>
<!-- ... -->
</msContents>
</msPart>

```

1.6.7.1. Endleaf

Example: MS. Auct. D. 2. 14 (abbreviated)

```

<msDesc xml:id="MS_Auct_D_2_14"
xml:lang="en">
<msIdentifier>
<!-- ... -->
</msIdentifier>
<head>Gospels; Italy, 7th century</head>
<!-- ... -->
<msContents>
<!-- ... -->
</msContents>
<physDesc>
<!-- ... -->
</physDesc>
<history>
<!-- ... -->
</history>
<additional>
<!-- ... -->
</additional>
<msPart type="endleaf">
<msIdentifier>
<altIdentifier>
<idno type="part">MS. Auct. D. 2. 14 - endleaf,
fol. 173</idno>
</altIdentifier>
</msIdentifier>
<msContents>
<msItem>
<locus>(fol. 173r)</locus>
<title type="desc">Booklist and list of
names</title>
<note>N. R. Ker, <title>Catalogue of Manuscripts
Containing Anglo-Saxon</title> (1957), p. 350 (no.
290).</note>
<textLang mainLang="en">Old English</textLang>
</msItem>
<msItem>
<locus>(fol. 173v)</locus>
<title>Ad introitum porte</title>
<textLang mainLang="la">Latin</textLang>
</msItem>
</msContents>
<history>
<origin>
<origPlace>
<country key="place_7002445">England</country>,
<orgName key="org_150107857">Bury St Edmunds</orgName>
(?)</origPlace>

```

```

<origDate calendar="Gregorian"
    notAfter="1200" notBefore="1150">11th century,
    second half</origDate>
</origin>
<provenance>'Bealdewuine abb.', fol. 173r, probably
    Baldwin, abbot of Bury St Edmunds (d.
    1098).</provenance>
</history>
</msPart>
</msDesc>

```

1.6.7.2. Manuscripts with replacement leaves

Example: MS. Holkham Gr. 15 (simplified)

```

<msDesc>
<!-- ... -->
<msContents>
    <textLang mainLang="grc">Greek</textLang>
    <msItem xml:id="MS_Holkham_Gr_15-item1">
        <locus>(fols. 1r-202v)</locus>
        <title key="work_13296" type="desc">Menologion for
            September</title>
    <!-- ... -->
    </msItem>
</msContents>
<physDesc>
    <p>11th century core with 14th or 15th century
        replacement leaves.</p>
    <objectDesc form="codex">
        <supportDesc>
            <extent> ii + 204<dimensions type="leaf" unit="mm">
                <height>350</height>
                <width>250</width>
            </dimensions>
        </extent>
        </supportDesc>
        <layoutDesc>
            <layout columns="2" ruledLines="33">Lake II, 34c;
                written in two columns, 33 lines per
                column.</layout>
        </layoutDesc>
    </objectDesc>
    <decoDesc>
        <decoNote>fol. 1, Sketch with an image of St
            Theodora. Various decorated headpieces preceding
            each Vita. See Hutter III.1, pp. 59-60.</decoNote>
    </decoDesc>
    <additions>fol. 55r: ζήτει εἰς τὰς ὁκτώ τοῦ μηνὸς εἰς
        τὴν ἀρχὴν τοῦ βιβλίου ἀναγνώσματα δε<ex>ύ</ex>ο/ εἰς
        τὸ σωσίκοσμον<ex>ον</ex> γενέθλον τῆς
        ὑπερ<ex>αγίας</ex> ἀμώμου δεσποίνης/ ἡμῶν
        θεοτόκου. Ἀνδρέου κρίτης τοῦ ἱεροσολυμίτου :
        -</additions>
    <bindingDesc>
        <binding>
            <p>Holkham binding of black leather, with Coke
                family ostrich crest in gilt in the centre of the
                upper cover; Date: early nineteenth century.
                Rebound by <persName key="person_707" role="bnd">John Jones of
                Liverpool</persName> (worked for
                Holkham 1816-1823). SPINE: lettered in gilt:
                SYMEONIS| METAPHRASTAE| VITAE| S.S. MARTYRUM| G.R.| M.S.| S.A.C. XII|-| SEP.| </p>
        </binding>
    </bindingDesc>
</physDesc>
<!-- ... -->
<msPart>
<msIdentifier>

```

```

<altIdentifier>
  <idno>Codicological Unit 1 (fols. 8r-180v)</idno>
</altIdentifier>
</msIdentifier>
<physDesc>
  <objectDesc form="codex">
    <supportDesc material="perg">
      <support> Parchment</support>
    </supportDesc>
  </objectDesc>
</physDesc>
<history>
  <origin>
    <origDate notAfter="1100"
      notBefore="1050">11th
      century, second half</origDate>
  </origin>
</history>
</msPart>
<msPart>
<msIdentifier>
  <altIdentifier>
    <idno>Codicological Unit 2 (fols. 1r-7r,
      181r-202v)</idno>
  </altIdentifier>
</msIdentifier>
<physDesc>
  <objectDesc form="codex">
    <supportDesc material="chart">
      <support> Paper; replacement leaves</support>
    </supportDesc>
  </objectDesc>
</physDesc>
<history>
  <origin>
    <origDate notAfter="1500"
      notBefore="1300">14th-15th century</origDate>
  </origin>
</history>
</msPart>
</msDesc>

```

1.6.8. Appendix of examples

1.6.8.1. Book of Hours

Divide the contents: Calendar; Suffrages (each saint listed as a separate `<msItem>`); Hours of the Virgin; Hours of the Passion; and so on – and then, using decimal point numbering for `<msItem>`, subdivide each of the Hours into the canonical hours, where present (Matins, Lauds, Prime, and so on).

```

<msItem n="12">
  <locus from="34r" to="58v">34r-58v</locus>
  <title xml:lang="eng">Hours of the Virgin</title>
  <textLang mainLang="lat">Latin</textLang>
  <msItem n="12.1">
    <locus from="34r" to="37r">34r-37r</locus>
    <title xml:lang="eng">Matins</title>
  </msItem>
</msItem>
<!-- etc. --&gt;
</pre>

```

1.6.8.2. Bible

Divide the contents: Prologue to the Vulgate; Old Testament; New Testament; ‘Interpretationes nominum hebraicorum’; and so on - and then, using decimal point numbering for `<msItem>`, subdivide each one where appropriate, distinguishing between the biblical text and their prologues.

```

<msItem n="1">
  <locus from="2r" to="4v">2r-4v</locus>
  <title xml:lang="eng">Prologue to the Vulgate</title>
  <author> [...] </author>
  <msItem n="1.1">
    <locus from="2r" to="4r">2r-4r</locus>
    <title xml:lang="lat">Epistula ad Paulinum
      presbyterum</title>
    <rubric>
      <locus from="1r" to="1r">1r</locus>Incipit prologus
        Ieromini super totam bibliam </rubric>
    <incipit xml:lang="lat">
      <locus from="1r" to="1r">1r</locus>Frater Ambrosius
        tua mihi munuscula preferens </incipit>
    <explicit xml:lang="lat">
      <locus from="4r" to="4r">4r</locus>facile contempnit
        omnia qui se semper cogitat esse moriturum </explicit>
    <note>PL 23, 540-549; Stegmüller 284, 3306; CPL
      620</note>
    <note>CSEL 54 (1910), 442-65.</note>
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="1.2">
    <locus from="4r" to="4v">4r-4v</locus>
    <title xml:lang="eng">Prologue to the Old
      Testament</title>
    <rubric xml:lang="lat">
      <locus from="4r" to="4r">4r</locus>Incipit prologus
        beati Ieromini in pentachum </rubric>
    <incipit xml:lang="lat">
      <locus from="4r" to="4r">4r</locus> Desiderii meii
        desideratus accepi epistulas </incipit>
    <explicit xml:lang="lat">
      <locus from="4v" to="4v">4v</locus> possim eodem
        spiritu quo scripti sunt libri in latinum eos
        transferre sermonem </explicit>
    <note>PL 28, 177-184; Stegmüller 285.</note>
  </msItem>
</msItem>
<msItem n="2">
  <locus from="5r" to="321v">5r-321v</locus>
  <title xml:lang="eng">Vulgate, Old Testament</title>
  <incipit xml:lang="lat">
    <locus from="5r" to="5r">5r</locus>In principio creavit
      deus celum et terram </incipit>
  <explicit xml:lang="lat">
    <locus from="321v" to="321v">321v</locus>non erit ut
      ingratus hic ergo erit consummatus. </explicit>
  <msItem n="2.1">
    <locus from="5r" to="21v">5r-21v</locus>
    <title xml:lang="eng">Genesis</title>
  </msItem>
<!-- [...] -->
</msItem>

```

2. Schema

2.1. Elements

2.1.1. <TEI>

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the **model.resourceLike** class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined to form a <teiCorpus> element. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module	textstructure — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,

	<p><code>@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facss)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code></p> <p>@version</p> <p>specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Data type <code>teidata.version</code></p> <p>Note Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the @source attribute on the associated <code><schemaSpec></code>.</p>
Contained by	—
May contain	<p>header: <code>teiHeader</code></p> <p>textstructure: <code>text</code></p> <p>transcr: <code>facsimile</code></p>
Note	This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace <code>http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0</code> on it, using the @xmlns attribute.
Example	<pre><TEI version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> <teiHeader> <fileDesc> <titleStmt> <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt> <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5 version using a name space.</p> </publicationStmt> <sourceDesc> <p>No source: this is an original work.</p> </sourceDesc> </fileDesc> </teiHeader> <text> <body> <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p> </body> </text> </TEI></pre>
Example	<pre><TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> <teiHeader> <fileDesc> <titleStmt> <title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt></pre>

```

<p>Unpublished demonstration file.</p>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
  <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
<facsimile>
  <graphic url="page1.png"/>
  <graphic url="page2.png"/>
  <graphic url="page3.png"/>
  <graphic url="page4.png"/>
</facsimile>
</TEI>

```

Schematron

```

<sch:rule context="tei:TEI">
<sch:assert role="fatal"
  test="matches(@xml:id, '^manuscript_\d+$') or contains(base-
uri(.), 'genizah-mss')"> The root TEI element must have an
@xml:id beginning with
"manuscript_" then a number (which must also be unique
across the entire catalogue).
</sch:assert>
<sch:assert role="fatal"
  test="matches(@xml:id, '^volume_\d+$') or not(contains(base-
uri(.), 'genizah-mss'))"> The root TEI element must have an
@xml:id beginning with
"volume_" then a number (which must also be unique
across the entire catalogue).
</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

```

Schematron

```

<s:ns prefix="tei"
  uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
<s:ns prefix="xs"
  uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/>

```

Schematron

```

<s:ns prefix="rng"
  uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>

```

Content model

```

<content>
  <sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
    <classRef key="model.resourceLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
  </sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element TEI

```

```

    {
      att.global.attributes,
      att.typed.attributes,
      attribute version { text }?,
      ( teiHeader, model.resourceLike+ )
    }
  
```

2.1.2. <abbr>

<**abbr**> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>) <code>att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code></p> <p>@type allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.</p> <p>Derived from</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Data type <code>data.enumerated</code></p> <p>Samples</p> <p>suspension the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.</p> <p>include: letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.</p> <p>contraction the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.</p> <p>brevigraph the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.</p> <p>superscription the abbreviation includes writing above the line.</p> <p>acronym the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.</p> <p>title the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, ...)</p> <p>organization the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.</p> <p>geographic the abbreviation is for a geographic name.</p> <p>Note The @type attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by</p>

	<p>the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see [[undefined PETTY]]</p>
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Note	If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the <editorialDecl>, either with a <normalization> element or a <p>.
Example	<pre><choice> <expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expan> <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr> <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr> <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr> </choice></pre>
Example	<pre><choice> <abbr>SPQR</abbr> <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan> </choice></pre>

Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element abbr { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute type { text }?, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.3. <accMat>

<accMat> (accompanying material) contains details of any significant additional material which may be closely associated with the manuscript or object being described, such as non-contemporaneous documents or fragments bound in with it at some earlier historical period. [10.7.3.3. Accompanying Material]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.physDescPart
Contained by	msdescription: physDesc
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><accMat>A copy of a tax form from 1947 is included in the envelope with the letter. It is not catalogued separately.</accMat></pre>

Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element accMat { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.4. <acquisition>

<acquisition> contains any descriptive or other information concerning the process by which a manuscript or manuscript part or other object entered the holding institution. [10.8. History]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Contained by	msdescription: history
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><acquisition>Left to the <name type="place">Bodleian</name> by <name type="person">Richard Rawlinson</name> in 1755. </acquisition></pre>
Content model	

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element acquisition
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara
}

```

2.1.5. <add>

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.fac (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)) (att.written (@hand)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage fw subst supplied zone
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

	<p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	<p>In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <code><add></code> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <code><corr></code> or <code><supplied></code> element are recommended.</p> <p>In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <code><add></code> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.</p>
Example	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px;"> <p>The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences <code><add place="above"></code>of these facts<code></add></code> from which this tale takes its title.</p> </div>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element add { att.global.attributes, att.transcriptional.attributes, att.placement.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, macro paraContent }</pre>

2.1.6. `<addName>`

`<addName>` (additional name) contains an additional name component, such as a nickname, epithet, or alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

Module	namesdates — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>) <code>att.personal (@full, @sort)</code> (<code>att.naming (@role, @nymRef)</code>) (<code>att.canonical (@key, @ref)</code>)) <code>att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code>
Member of	<code>model.persNamePart</code>
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p>

	<p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<pre><persName> <forename>Frederick</forename> <addName type="epithet">the Great</addName> <roleName>Emperor of Prussia</roleName> </persName></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element addName { att.global.attributes, att.personal.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.7. <additional>

<additional> groups additional information, combining bibliographic information about a manuscript or other object, or surrogate copies of it, with curatorial or administrative information. [10.9. Additional Information]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.fac (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	msdescription: msDesc msFrag msPart
May contain	core: listBibl msdescription: adminInfo surrogates
Example	<pre> <additional> <adminInfo> <recordHist> <p> <!-- record history here --> </p> </recordHist> <custodialHist> <p> <!-- custodial history here --> </p> </custodialHist> </adminInfo> <surrogates> <p> <!-- information about surrogates here --> </p> </surrogates> <listBibl> <bibl> <!-- ... --> </bibl> <!-- full bibliography here --> </listBibl> </additional></pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <elementRef key="adminInfo" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="surrogates" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="listBibl" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element additional { att.global.attributes, (adminInfo?, surrogates?, listBibl?)</pre>

2.1.8. <additions>

<additions> contains a description of any significant additions found within a manuscript or other object, such as marginalia or other annotations. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.physDescPart
Contained by	msdescription: physDesc
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<pre> <additions> <p>There are several marginalia in this manuscript. Some consist of single characters and others are figurative. On 8v is to be found a drawing of a mans head wearing a hat. At times sentences occurs: On 5v: <q xml:lang="is">Her er skrif andres isslendin</q>, on 19r: <q xml:lang="is">þeim go</q>, on 21r: <q xml:lang="is">amen med aund ok munn halla rei knar hofud summu all huad batar þad mælgji ok mal</q>, On 21v: some runic letters and the sentence <q xml:lang="la">aue maria gracia plena dominus</q>. </p> </additions> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element additions { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara } </pre>

2.1.9. <addrLine>

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.5.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.addrPart
Contained by	core: address
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Note	Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text.
Example	<pre> <address> <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine> <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine> <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine> <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine> </address> </pre>
Example	<pre> <addrLine> <ref target="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</ref> </addrLine> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq } </pre>

2.1.10. <address>

<**address**> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.
[\[3.5.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information\]](#)

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal publicationStmt scriptNote sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: addrLine gap lb name note pb postCode street figures: figure header: idno namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: fw
Note	This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street> , <postCode> etc.
Example	Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows: <pre> <address> <street>via Marsala 24</street> <postCode>40126</postCode> <name>Bologna</name> <name>Italy</name> </address> </pre>
Example	When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such

	<p>as country or settlement would be preferable over generic <name>:</p> <pre><address> <street>via Marsala 24</street> <postCode>40126</postCode> <settlement>Bologna</settlement> <country>Italy</country> </address></pre>
Example	<pre><address> <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine> <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine> <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine> <addrLine>USA</addrLine> </address></pre>
Example	<pre><address> <country key="FR"/> <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement> <postCode>69002</postCode> <district type="arrondissement">IIIème</district> <district type="quartier">Perrache</district> <street> <num>30</num>, Cours de Verdun</street> </address></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <sequence> <classRef key="model.global" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.addrPart"/> <classRef key="model.global" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> </sequence> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element address { att.global.attributes, (model.global*, (model.addrPart, model.global*)+) }</pre>

2.1.11. <adminInfo>

<adminInfo> (administrative information) contains information about the present custody and availability of manuscript or other object, and also about the record description itself. [10.9.1. Administrative Information]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendil (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOr @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	msdescription: additional
May contain	core: note header: availability msdescription: custodialHist recordHist
Example	<pre> <adminInfo> <recordHist> <source>Record created <date>1 Aug 2004</date> </source> </recordHist> <availability> <p>Until 2015 permission to photocopy some materials from this collection has been limited at the request of the donor. Please ask repository staff for details if you are interested in obtaining photocopies from Series 1: Correspondence.</p> </availability> <custodialHist> <p>Collection donated to the Manuscript Library by the Estate of Edgar Holden in 1993. Donor number: 1993-034.</p> </custodialHist> </adminInfo> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <elementRef key="recordHist" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="availability" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="custodialHist" minOccurs="0"/> <classRef key="model.noteLike" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element adminInfo { att.global.attributes, (recordHist?, availability?, custodialHist?, model.noteLike? } </pre>

2.1.12. <altIdentifier>

<altIdentifier> (alternative identifier) contains an alternative or former structured identifier used for a

manuscript or other object, such as a former catalogue number. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Contained by	msdescription: msFrag msIdentifier
May contain	core: note header: idno msdescription: collection institution repository namesdates: country district geogName placeName region settlement
Note	An identifying number of some kind must be supplied if known; if it is not known, this should be stated.
Example	<pre><altIdentifier> <settlement>San Marino</settlement> <repository>Huntington Library</repository> <idno>MS.E1.26.C.9</idno> </altIdentifier></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <sequence> <classRef expand="sequenceOptional" key="model.placeNamePart"/> <elementRef key="institution" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="repository" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="collection" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="idno"/> <elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element altIdentifier { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, (placeName?, country?, region?, settlement?, district?, geogName?, institution?, repository?, collection?,</pre>

```

    idno,
    note?
}

```

2.1.13. <am>

<am> (abbreviation marker) contains a sequence of letters or signs present in an abbreviation which are omitted or replaced in the expanded form of the abbreviation. [11.3.1.2. Abbreviation and Expansion]

Module	transcr — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item I label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: add corr del orig reg sic unclear transcr: damage supplied character data
Example	<pre> do you <abbr>Mr<am>. </am> </abbr> Jones? </pre>
Example	<pre> <choice> <abbr>Aug<am>g</am> </abbr> <expan>Aug<ex>ustorum duo</ex> </expan> </choice> </pre>

Example	<pre> <abbr>eu<am> <g ref="#b-er"/> </am>y</abbr> <abbr> <am> <g ref="#b-per"/> </am>sone </abbr> ... </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.pPart.transcriptional"/> </alternate> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element am { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, (text model.gLike model.pPart.transcriptional)* } </pre>

2.1.14. <author>

<p><author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a world recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]</p>	
Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.ren (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.glc (@att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@rol
Member of	model.respLike
Contained by	core: bibl header: editionStmt titleStmt msdescription: msItem msItemStruct
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb me unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg

	<p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp mater watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName p</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	<p>Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advised to supply the content for this element. The attributes @key or @ref may also be used to refer to any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.</p> <p>In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible. Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as <i>Unknown</i>. In use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or</p>
Example	<pre><author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author> <author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1752-1837)</author> <author>Anonymous</author> <author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author> <author> <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and <persName>John Fletcher</persName> </author> <author> <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network </author></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="//tei:msItem//tei:author[ancestor::tei:fileDesc[designates(msItem)]] <sch:assert test="@key[matches(., 'person_\d+')]">In the medieval catalogue, the author element, when a child of msItem, must have a key matching the pattern 'person_\d+'.</sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element author { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.15. <authority>

<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of	model.publicationStmtPart.agency
Contained by	header: publicationStmt
May contain	core: abbr address choice date email expan foreign gap hi lb measure name note num pb ref term title figures: figure header: idno msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am ex fw subst character data
Example	<pre><authority>John Smith</authority></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element authority { att.global.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }</pre>

2.1.16. <availability>

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next,

	<p><code>@exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.re (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)</code></p> <p>@status</p> <p>Specifies the availability of a manuscript. This attribute can be used to specify the availability of manuscript meta information via the <code><licence></code> element for that purpose.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <code>one or more occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace</code></p> <p>Legal free values The item is available.</p> <p>restricted Access to the item is restricted for commercial or other reasons.</p> <p>exhibition The item is on exhibition at the owning institution or another institution, and is likely to be temporarily unavailable.</p> <p>offsite The item is stored offsite, and will take twenty-four hours to produce.</p> <p>unknown Availability of the item is unknown.</p>
Member of	<code>model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail</code>
Contained by	<p>core: <code>bibl series</code></p> <p>header: <code>publicationStmt</code></p> <p>msdescription: <code>adminInfo</code></p>
May contain	<p>core: <code>p</code></p> <p>header: <code>licence</code></p>
Note	A consistent format should be adopted
Example	<pre><availability status="restricted"> <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p> </availability> <availability status="free"> <p>In the public domain</p> </availability> <availability status="restricted"> <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p> </availability></pre>
Example	<pre><availability> <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT"> <p>The MIT License applies to this document.</p> <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p> <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software") in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the right to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p> <p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p></pre>

	<pre> all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p> <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXP IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS WITH THE SOFTWARE.</p> </licence> </availability></pre>
--	---

Content model

	<pre> <content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/> <classRef key="model.pLike"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
--	--

Schema Declaration

	<pre> element availability { att.global.attributes, att.declarable.attributes, attribute status { list { ("free" "restricted" "exhibition" "offsite" "uri" }?, (model.availabilityPart model.pLike)+ } }</pre>
--	---

2.1.17. <bibl>

<p><bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]</p>	
---	--

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@fac)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>) <code>att.declarable (@default)</code> <code>att.sortable (@sortKey)</code> <code>att.docStatus (@status)</code> <code>att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code></p> <p>@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p>Derivatived from</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <code>data.enumerated</code></p>

	<p>Suggested values The reference is to a manuscript included in the Bodleian Quarto Catalogues</p> <p>SC The reference is to the Bodleian Summary Catalogue</p> <p>OC The reference is to the Bodleian Old Catalogue</p> <p>bible The reference is to the bible</p> <p>commentary The reference is to a commentary</p> <p>edition The reference is to an edition</p> <p>extract The reference is to an extract</p> <p>related The reference is to a related item</p> <p>text-relations The reference is to a textually-related item</p> <p>translation The reference is to a translation</p>
Member of	model.biblLike model.biblPart
Contained by	<p>core: add bibl cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem sic title unclear</p> <p>figures: figDesc figure</p> <p>header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc taxonomy</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout msItem msItemStruct musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates typeNote</p> <p>textstructure: body div</p> <p>transcr: damage supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign gap hi lb measure name note num orig pb pubPlace publisher ref reg relatedItem respStmt series sic term textLang title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure</p> <p>header: availability distributor edition extent funder idno principal sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: depth dim height msIdentifier width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	Contains <i>phrase-level</i> elements, together with any combination of elements from the model.biblPart class
Example	<pre><bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature</pre>

	in English (Yale, 1990)</bibl>
--	-----------------------------------

Example

```
<bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the
  Wood</title>. In
  <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny
  Histories</title>.
  <publisher>OUP</publisher>
  <date>1968</date>.
</bibl>
```

Example

```
<bibl subtype="book_chapter" type="article"
  xml:id="carlin_2003">
  <author>
    <name>
      <surname>Carlin</surname>
      (<forename>Claire</forename>)</name>
    </author>,
  <title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France's last
  congrès</title> dans
  <bibl type="monogr">
    <title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.
    Tobin</title>, éd.
    <editor>
      <name>
        <forename>Claire</forename>
        <surname>Carlin</surname>
      </name>
    </editor> et
    <editor>
      <name>
        <forename>Kathleen</forename>
        <surname>Wine</surname>
      </name>
    </editor>,
    <pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</pubPlace>,
    <publisher>Rookwood Press</publisher>,
    <date when="2003">2003</date>.
  </bibl>
</bibl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
  minOccurs="0">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.highlighted"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
  <classRef key="model.segLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.biblPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema

Declaration

```
element bibl
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.declarable.attributes,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    att.sortable.attributes,
    att.docStatus.attributes,
    attribute type
    {
        "MS"
        "QUARTO"
        "SC"
        "OC"
        "bible"
        "commentary"
        "edition"
        "extract"
        "related"
        "text-relations"
        "translation"
    }?,
    (
        text
        model.gLike
        model.highlighted
        model.pPart.data
        model.pPart.edit
        model.segLike
        model.ptrLike
        model.biblPart
        model.global
    )*
}
```

2.1.18. <biblScope>

<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.11.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.fac (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to)
Member of	model.imprintPart
Contained by	core: bibl series
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

	<p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	<p>When a single page is being cited, use the @from and @to attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the @from attribute may be used without @to; for example a citation such as 'p. 3ff' might be encoded <biblScope from="3">p. 3ff</biblScope>.</p> <p>It is now considered good practice to supply this element as a sibling (rather than a child) of <imprint>, since it supplies information which does not constitute part of the imprint.</p>
Example	<pre><biblScope>pp 12-34</biblScope> <biblScope from="12" to="34" unit="page"/> <biblScope unit="volume">II</biblScope> <biblScope unit="page">12</biblScope></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element biblScope { att.global.attributes, att.citing.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.19. <binding>

<binding> contains a description of one binding, i.e. type of covering, boards, etc. applied to a manuscript or other object. [10.7.3.1. Binding Descriptions]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))</p> <p>@contemporary specifies whether or not the binding is contemporary with the majority of its contents</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Data <code>idata.xTruthValue</code></p>

	<p>NoteThe value true indicates that the binding is contemporaneous with its contents; the value false that it is not. The value unknown should be used when the date of either binding or manuscript is unknown</p>
Contained by	msdescription: bindingDesc
May contain	core: p msdescription: condition decoNote
Example	<pre><binding contemporary="true"> <p>Contemporary blind stamped leather over wooden boards with evidence of a fore edge clasp closing to the back cover.</p> </binding></pre>
Example	<pre><bindingDesc> <binding contemporary="false"> <p>Quarter bound by the Phillipps' binder, Bretherton, with his sticker on the front pastedown.</p> </binding> <binding contemporary="false"> <p>Rebound by an unknown 19th c. company; edges cropped and gilt.</p> </binding> </bindingDesc></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="//tei:binding"> <sch:assert role="warn" test="@when or @notBefore or @notAfter or @contemporary='true'"> The binding element should have dating attributes (when or notBefore/notAfter) or a contemporary attribute (with the value 'true') . </sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.pLike"/> <elementRef key="condition"/> <elementRef key="decoNote"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element binding {</pre>

```

    att.global.attributes,
    att.datable.attributes,
    attribute contemporary { text }?,
    ( model.pLike | condition | decoNote )+
}

```

2.1.20. <bindingDesc>

<bindingDesc> (binding description) describes the present and former bindings of a manuscript or other object, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct [<binding>](#) elements, one for each binding of the manuscript. [10.7.3.1. Binding Descriptions]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.physDescPart
Contained by	msdescription: physDesc
May contain	core: p msdescription: binding condition decoNote
Example	<pre> <bindingDesc> <p>Sewing not visible; tightly rebound over 19th-cent. pasteboards, reusing panels of 16th-cent. brown leather with gilt tooling à la fanfare, Paris c. 1580-90, the centre of each cover inlaid with a 17th-cent. oval medallion of red morocco tooled in gilt (perhaps replacing the identifying mark of a previous owner); the spine similarly tooled, without raised bands or title-piece; coloured endbands; the edges of the leaves and boards gilt.Boxed.</p> </bindingDesc> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.pLike"/> <elementRef key="decoNote"/> <elementRef key="condition"/> </alternate> <elementRef key="binding" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </alternate> </content> </pre>
Schema	

Declaration	<pre>element bindingDesc { att.global.attributes, ((model.pLike decoNote condition)+ binding+) }</pre>
--------------------	--

2.1.21. <body>

<**body**> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4 Text Structure]

Module	textstructure — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facets)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.reference (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls)
Contained by	textstructure: text
May contain	core: bibl cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl note p pb q quote derived-module-msdesc: include figures: figure msdescription: msDesc textstructure: div transcr: fw
Example	<pre><body> <1>Nu scylin hergan hefaenricaes uard</1> <1>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</1> <1>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuae</1> <1>eci dryctin or astelidae</1> <1>he aerist scop aelda barnum</1> <1>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</1> <1>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</1> <1>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</1> <1>firum foldu frea allmectig</1> <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer> </body></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <sequence> <classRef key="model.global" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> <sequence minOccurs="0"> <classRef key="model.divTop"/> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <classRef key="model.global"/> <classRef key="model.divTop"/> </alternate> </sequence> <sequence minOccurs="0"> <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"</pre>

```

    minOccurs="0">
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
<alternate>
  <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="0">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <sequence>
    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
      minOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    </sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0">
      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="1">
        <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
        <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
          minOccurs="0">
          <classRef key="model.global"/>
          <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
        </alternate>
      </sequence>
      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="1">
        <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
        <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
          minOccurs="0">
          <classRef key="model.global"/>
          <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
        </alternate>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
  minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element body
{

```

```

    att.global.attributes,
    att.declaring.attributes,
    (
      model.global*,
      ( model.divTop, ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
      ( model.divGenLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?
      (
        ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
        | ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )
        |
        ( model.common, model.global* )+
        (
          ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )? )
          | ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )? )
        )
      ),
      ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
    )
  }
}

```

2.1.22. <catDesc>

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal **<textDesc>**. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	header: category
May contain	core: abbr address choice date email expan foreign hi measure name num ref term title header: idno msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am ex subst character data
Example	<pre><catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc></pre>
Example	<pre><catDesc> <textDesc n="novel"> <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel> <constitution type="single"/> <derivation type="original"/> <domain type="art"/> <factuality type="fiction"/></pre>

```

<interaction type="none"/>
<preparedness type="prepared"/>
<purpose degree="high" type="entertain"/>
<purpose degree="medium" type="inform"/>
</textDesc>
</catDesc>

```

Content model

```

<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
<classRef key="model.catDescPart"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element catDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.catDescPart )*
}

```

2.1.23. <catchwords>

<**catchwords**> describes the system used to ensure correct ordering of the quires or similar making up a codex, incunable, or other object typically by means of annotations at the foot of the page. [10.3.7. [Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio](#)]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expans foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: damage fw supplied

May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><catchwords>Vertical catchwords in the hand of the scribe placed along the inner bounding line, reading from top to bottom.</catchwords></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:msDesc or ancestor::tei:egXML">The <sch:name/> element should not be used outside of msDesc. </sch:assert></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element catchwords { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.24. <category>

<category> contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, \ user-defined taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linked (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	header: category taxonomy
May contain	<p>core: desc</p> <p>header: catDesc category</p>
Example	

```

<category xml:id="b1">
  <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
</category>

```

Example

```

<category xml:id="b2">
  <catDesc>Prose </catDesc>
  <category xml:id="b11">
    <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="b12">
    <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>

```

Example

```

<category xml:id="LIT">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura piękna</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="LPROSE">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="LPOETRY">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="LDRAMA">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>

```

Content model

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate>
      <elementRef key="catDesc"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.glossLike"/>
      </alternate>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="category"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element category
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( catDesc+ | ( model.descLike | model.glossLike )* ), catego
}

```

2.1.25. <change>

<p><change> documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions]</p>	
Module	header — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.ascribed (@who) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code></p> <p>@target points to one or more elements that belong to this change.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by whitespace</p>
Contained by	<p>header: revisionDesc</p> <p>msdescription: recordHist</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Note	<p>The @who attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <code><respStmt></code> or <code><person></code> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it.</p> <p>It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The @status attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.</p>
Example	<pre> <titleStmt> <title> ... </title> <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor> <respStmt xml:id="BZ"> <resp>copy editing</resp> <name>Brett Zamir</name> </respStmt> </titleStmt> <!-- ... --> <revisionDesc status="published"> <change status="public" when="2008-02-02"> </pre>

```

    <change who="#BZ">Finished chapter 23</change>
    <change status="draft" when="2008-01-02"
      who="#BZ">Finished chapter 2</change>
    <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21"
      who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change>
    <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
  </revisionDesc>

```

Example

```

<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
      <change notBefore="1880-12-09"
        xml:id="DRAFT2">First revision, mostly
        using green ink</change>
      <change notBefore="1881-02-13"
        xml:id="DRAFT3">Final corrections as
        supplied to printer.</change>
    </listChange>
  </creation>
</profileDesc>

```

Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element change
{
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { list { + } }?,
  macro.specialPara
}

```

2.1.26. <choice>

<choice> groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [3.4. Simple Editorial Ch...	
Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.reference (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.linePart model.pPart.editorial
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc editor expan foreign head hi item I label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear

	<p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence princip scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition cust decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNota objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stam support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persNam placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied zone</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>transcr: am ex supplied</p>
Note	<p>Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel. Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.</p> <p>Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the <app> element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses should be preferred.</p>
Example	<p>An American encoding of <i>Gulliver's Travels</i> which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.</p> <pre><p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice> <sic>1724</sic> <corr>1728</corr> </choice> of our subjects, with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our <choice> <orig>favour</orig> <reg>favor</reg> </choice>. </p></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="2"> <classRef key="model.choicePart"/> <elementRef key="choice"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element choice { att.global.attributes, (model.choicePart choi</pre>

2.1.27. <cit>

<**cit**> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

[3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 9.3.5.1. Examples]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.quoteLike
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit citedRange corr del desc editor email expans foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc figure header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname textstructure: body div transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: bibl cit gap lb listBibl note pb q quote ref figures: figure msdescription: msDesc transcr: fw
Example	<pre> <cit> <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an insupportable smell, as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote> <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl> </cit> </pre>
Example	<pre> <entry> <form> <orth>horrifier</orth> </form> <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en"> <quote>to horrify</quote> </cit> <cit type="example"> <quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote> <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en"> <quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote> </cit> </cit> </entry> </pre>

	<pre> </cit> </cit> </entry> </pre>
--	---

Content model

	<pre> <content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.qLike"/> <classRef key="model.egLike"/> <classRef key="model.biblLike"/> <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> <classRef key="model.entryPart"/> </alternate> </content> </pre>
--	---

Schema Declaration

	<pre> element cit { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, (model.qLike model.egLike model.biblLike model.ptrLike model.global model.entryPart)+ } </pre>
--	---

2.1.28. <citedRange>

<p><citedRange> (cited range) defines the range of cited content, often represented by pages or other units [3.11.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]</p>	
---	--

<citedRange> (cited range) defines the range of cited content, often represented by pages or other units [3.11.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]	
Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to)
Member of	model.biblPart
Contained by	core: bibl
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg

	<p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	When a single page is being cited, use the @from and @to attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the @from attribute may be used without @to; for example a citation such as 'p. 3ff' might be encoded <biblScope from="3">p. 3ff</biblScope>.
Example	<pre><citedRange>pp 12-13</citedRange> <citedRange from="12" to="13" unit="page"/> <citedRange unit="volume">II</citedRange> <citedRange unit="page">12</citedRange></pre>
Example	<pre><bibl> <ptr target="#mueller01"/>, <citedRange target="http://example.com/mueller3.xml#page4">vol. 3, pp. 4-5</citedRange> </bibl></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element citedRange { att.global.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.citing.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.29. <classDecl>

<p><classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description]</p>	
Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of	model.encodingDescPart
Contained by	header: encodingDesc
May contain	header: taxonomy
Example	<pre> <classDecl> <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH"> <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl> </taxonomy> </classDecl> <!-- ... --> <textClass> <keywords scheme="#LCSH"> <term>Political science</term> <term>United States -- Politics and government -- Revolution, 1775-1783</term> </keywords> </textClass></pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <elementRef key="taxonomy" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element classDecl { att.global.attributes, taxonomy+ }</pre>

2.1.30. <collation>

<collation> contains a description of how the leaves, bifolia, or similar objects are physically arranged. [10.7.1. Object Description]	
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>)</p> <p>@mainStructures Specifies the typical quire structure(s) of the book, according to English notation (i.e. the number of folios in the original quire), e.g. 8, 6 8. Note: This is a customization which is not currently part of the TEI P5 standard.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of <code>teidata.count</code> separated by whitespace</p>
Contained by	msdescription: supportDesc

May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><collation>The written leaves preceded by an original flyleaf, conjoint with the pastedown.</collation></pre>
Example	<pre><collation> <p> <formula>1-5.8 6.6 (catchword, f. 46, does not match following text) 7-8.8 9.10, 11.2 (through f. 82) 12-14.8 15.8(-7)</formula> <catchwords>Catchwords are written horizontally in center or towards the right lower margin in various manners: in red ink for quires 1-6 (which are also signed in red ink with letters of the alphabet and arabic numerals); quires 7-9 in ink of text within yellow decorated frames; quire 10 in red decorated frame; quire 12 in ink of text; quire 13 with red decorative slashes; quire 14 added in cursive hand.</catchwords> </p> </collation></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element collation { att.global.attributes, attribute mainStructures { list { + } }?, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.31. <collection>

<collection> contains the name of a collection of manuscripts or other objects, not necessarily located within a single repository. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Contained by	msdescription: altIdentifier msIdentifier
May contain	Character data only
Example	<pre><msIdentifier> <country>USA</country> <region>California</region> <settlement>San Marino</settlement> <repository>Huntington Library</repository> <collection>Ellesmere</collection> <idno>El 26 C 9</idno> <msName>The Ellesmere Chaucer</msName> </msIdentifier></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element collection { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.xtext }</pre>

2.1.32. <colophon>

<colophon> contains the *colophon* of an item: that is, a statement providing information regarding the date, place, agency, or reason for production of the manuscript or other object. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.msExcerpt (@defective)
Member of	model.msQuoteLike
Contained by	msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<pre><colophon>Ricardus Franciscus Scripsit Anno Domini 1447.</colophon></pre>
Example	<pre><colophon>Explicit expliceat/scriptor ludere eat.</colophon></pre>
Example	<pre><colophon>Explicit venenum viciorum domini illius, qui comparavit Anno domini Millessimo Trecentesimo nonagesimo primo, Sabbato in festo sancte Marthe virginis gloriose. Laus tibi criste quia finitur libellus iste.</colophon></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element colophon { att.global.attributes, att.msExcerpt.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.33. <condition>

<condition> contains a description of the physical condition of the manuscript or object. [10.7.1.5. Condition]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

	(att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	msdescription: binding bindingDesc sealDesc supportDesc
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<pre> <condition> <p>there are="" in="" lacunae="" places="" this<br="" three=""></p>there> manuscript. After 14v two leaves has been cut out and narrow strips leaves remains in the spine. After 68v one gathering is missing and after 101v at least one gathering of 8 leaves has been lost. </p> <p>several a<br="" are="" damaged="" have="" holes="" leaves="" or="" tears="" with=""></p>several> irregular shape. Some of the damages do not allow the lines to be of full length and they are apparently older than the script. There are tears on fol. 2r-v, 9r-v, 10r-v, 15r-18v, 19r-v, 20r-22v, 23r-v, 24r-28v, 30r-v, 32r-35v, 37r-v, 38r-v, 40r-43v, 45r-47v, 49r-v, 51r-v, 53r-60v, 67r-v, 68r- v, 70r-v, 74r-80v, 82r-v, 86r-v, 88r-v, 89r-v, 95r-v, 97r-98v 99r-v, 100r-v. On fol. 98 the corner has been torn off. Several leaves are in a bad condition due to moist and wear, and have become dark, bleached or wrinkled. </p> <p>the been<br="" has="" script=""></p>the> touched up in the 17th century with black ink. The touching up on the following fols. was done by <name>Bishop Brynjólf Sveinsson</name>: 1v, 3r, 4r, 5r, 6v, 8v, 9r, 10r, 14r, 14v, 22r, 30v, 36r-52v, 72v, 77r, 78r, 103r, 104r,. An AM-note says according to the lawman <name>Sigurður Björnsson</name> that the rest of the touching up was done by himself and another lawman <name>Sigurður Jónsson</name>. <name>Sigurður Björnsson</name> did the touching up on the following fols.: 46v, 47r, 48r, 49r-v, 50r, 52r-v. <name>Sigurður Jónsson</name> did the rest of the touching up in the section 36r-59r containing <title>Bretasögur</title> </p> </condition></pre>
Content model	

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```
element condition { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

2.1.34. <corr>

<**corr**> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.
[\[3.4.1. Apparent Errors\]](#)

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage fw supplied
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected,

	<p><corr> may be used alone:</p> <div style="background-color: #e0f2e0; padding: 10px;"> <p>I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now – how <corr>can we</corr> prove or disprove anyone's theories?</p> </div>
Example	<p>It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:</p> <div style="background-color: #e0f2e0; padding: 10px;"> <p>I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now – how <choice> <sic>we can</sic> <corr>can we</corr> </choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?</p> </div>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element corr { att.global.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro paraContent }</pre>

2.1.35. <countermark>

<countermark> Contains a description of a countermark. Note: This is a customization which is not currently part of the TEI P5 standard.

Namespace	https://github.com/bodleian/consolidated-tei-schema
Module	derived-module-msdesc
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)
Contained by	—
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula

	<p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element countermark { att.global.attributes, att.global.rendition.attributes, att.global.linking.attributes, att.global.change.attributes, att.global.responsibility.attributes, att.global.source.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.36. <country>

<p><country> contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, than a bloc. [13.2.3. Place Names]</p>	
Module	namesdates — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.ren@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canon (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notA @datingMethod)))
Member of	model.placeNamePart
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc ed num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unc derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence prin linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origF summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geoqFeat geoqName orgName persN

	transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb me unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp mater watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName per</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.
Example	<pre><country key="DK">Denmark</country></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="//tei:origin//tei:country[ancestor::tei:fileDesc[de <sch:assert test="@key[matches(., 'place_\d+')]"]>In the medieval catalogue, the country element, when a descendant of origin, must have a key matching the pattern 'place_\d+'.</sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element country { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.datable.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.37. <custEvent>

<**custEvent**> (custodial event) describes a single event during the custodial history of a manuscript or other object. [10.9.1.2. Availability and Custodial History]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Contained by	msdescription: custodialHist
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<pre><custEvent type="photography">Photographed by David Cooper on <date>12 Dec 1964</date> </custEvent></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element custEvent { att.global.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.38. <custodialHist>

<custodialHist> (custodial history) contains a description of a manuscript or other object's custodial histo prose or as a series of dated custodial events. [10.9.1.2. Availability and Custodial History]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendit @rendition) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.damaged (@agent, @degree, @group) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) (att.written (@hand))
Contained by	msdescription: adminInfo
May contain	core: p msdescription: custEvent
Example	<pre> <custodialHist> <custEvent notAfter="1963-02" notBefore="1961-03" type="conservation">Conserved between March 1961 and 1963 at Birgitte Dalls Konserveringsværksted.</custEvent> <custEvent notAfter="1988-05-30" notBefore="1988-05-01" type="photography">Photographed in May 1988 by AMI/FA.</custEvent> <custEvent notAfter="1989-11-13" notBefore="1989-11-13" type="transfer-dispatch">Dispatched to Iceland 13 November 1989.</custEvent> </custodialHist></pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="custEvent" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element custodialHist { att.global.attributes, (model.pLike+ </pre>

2.1.39. <damage>

<damage> contains an area of damage to the text witness. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]

Module	transcr — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.damaged (@agent, @degree, @group) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) (att.written (@hand))

Member of	model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage fw supplied zone</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Note	<p>Since damage to text witnesses frequently makes them harder to read, the <code><damage></code> element will often contain an <code><unclear></code> element. If the damaged area is not continuous (e.g. a stain affecting several strings of text), the <code>@group</code> attribute may be used to group together several related <code><damage></code> elements; alternatively the <code><join></code> element may be used to indicate which <code><damage></code> and <code><unclear></code> elements are part of the same physical phenomenon.</p> <p>The <code><damage></code>, <code><gap></code>, <code></code>, <code><unclear></code> and <code><supplied></code> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.</p>
Example	<pre><1>The Moving Finger wri<damage agent="water" group="1">es; and</damage> having writ,</1> <1>Moves <damage agent="water" group="1"> <supplied>nor all your</supplied> </damage> Piety nor Wit</1></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/> </content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre> element damage { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.damaged.attributes, macro paraContent } </pre>
---------------------------	--

2.1.40. <date>

<**date**> contains a date in any format. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 15.2.3. The Setting Description 13.3.7. Dates and Times]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal publicationStmt scriptNote sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: abbr add address choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname

	<p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<pre><date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date></pre>
Example	<p>Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth. </date></p>
Example	<pre><date when="1990-09">September 1990</date></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element date { att.global.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, att.typed.attributes, (text model.gLike model.phrase model.global)* }</pre>

2.1.41. <decoDesc>

<**decoDesc**> (decoration description) contains a description of the decoration of a manuscript or other object, either as in paragraphs, or as one or more <**decoNote**> elements. [10.7.3. Bindings, Seals, and Additional Material]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of	model.physDescPart
Contained by	msdescription: physDesc
May contain	core: p msdescription: decoNote summary
Example	<pre><decoDesc> <p>The start of each book of the Bible with a 10-line historiated illuminated initial; prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials with red penwork flourishing; chapters marked by 3-line plain red initials; verses with 1-line initials, alternately blue or red.</p> </decoDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <sequence> <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="decoNote" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </sequence> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element decoDesc { att.global.attributes, (model.pLike+ (summary?, decoNote+)) }</pre>

2.1.42. <decoNote>

<**decoNote**> (note on decoration) contains a note describing either a decorative component of a manuscript or other object, or a fairly homogenous class of such components. [10.7.3. Bindings, Seals, and Additional Material]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>) <code>att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code></p> <p><code>@type</code> characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p>Derived <code>att.typed</code></p>

	<p>from</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Data type data.enumerated</p> <p>Suggested values</p> <p>include: border(s)</p> <p>diagram</p> <p>The decoration note concerns the diagram(s)</p> <p>illustration</p> <p>The decoration note concerns the illustration(s)</p> <p>initial</p> <p>The decoration note concerns the initial(s)</p> <p>marginal</p> <p>The decoration note concerns the marginal decoration</p> <p>micrography</p> <p>The decoration note concerns the micrography</p> <p>miniature</p> <p>The decoration note concerns the miniature(s)</p> <p>rubrication</p> <p>The decoration note concerns the rubrication or other highlighting</p> <p>other</p> <p>The decoration note concerns other/unspecified aspects (you may also provide a custom value)</p>
Member of	model.msItemPart
Contained by	msdescription: binding bindingDesc decoDesc msItem msItemStruct seal sealDesc
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><decoDesc> <decoNote type="initial"> <cp>The start of each book of the Bible with a 10-line historiated illuminated initial; prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials with red penwork flourishing; chapters marked by 3-line plain red initials; verses with 1-line initials,</pre>

	<pre> alternately blue or red.</p> </decoNote> </decoDesc> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element decoNote { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute type { "border" "diagram" "illustration" "initial" "marginal" "micrography" "miniature" "rubrication" "other" }?, macro.specialPara } </pre>

2.1.43.

<**del**> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition))</code> (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select))</code> (<code>att.global.facs (@facss))</code> (<code>att.global.change (@change))</code> (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))</code> (<code>att.global.source (@source))</code> <code>att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq)</code> (<code>att.editLike (@evidence, @instant))</code> (<code>att.written (@hand))</code> <code>att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code> <code>att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)</code> (<code>att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))</code>
Member of	<code>model.linePart</code> <code>model.pPart.transcriptional</code>
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del editor email expans foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout

	<p>material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage fw subst supplied zone</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Note	<p>This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The <code><delSpan></code> element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.</p> <p>The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a <code><supplied></code> tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the <code><gap></code> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the <code><gap></code> element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the <code><unclear></code> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.</p> <p>Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the <code><certainty></code> element (see 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility).</p> <p>There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <code></code> and <code><surplus></code> on the one hand and <code><gap></code> or <code><unclear></code> on the other. <code></code> indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. <code><surplus></code> indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. <code><gap></code> or <code><unclear></code>, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.</p>
Example	<pre><1> <del rend="overtyped">Mein Frisch <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt weht der Wind </1></pre>
Example	<pre><del rend="overstrike"> <gap quantity="5" reason="illegible"</pre>

	<pre> unit="character"/> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element del { att.global.attributes, att.transcriptional.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, macro paraContent } </pre>

2.1.44. <depth>

<depth> contains a measurement from the front to the back of an object, perpendicular to the measurement of the <width> element. [10.3.4. Dimensions]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @att.global.source (@source)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @size, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)))
Member of	model.dimLike model.measureLike
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email emailAddress item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp size title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principle sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custodialNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotes origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName settlement surname transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	Character data only
Example	

	<pre><depth quantity="4" unit="in"/></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element depth { att.global.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes,</pre>

2.1.45. <desc>

<desc> (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, typically a documentation element or an entity. [22.4.1. Description of Components]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@faccs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>) <code>att.translatable (@versionDate)</code> <code>att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code></p> <p>@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology. Derived from Status optional Data <code>data.enumerated</code></p> <pre><elementSpec ident="teiCorpus" module="core" validUntil="2027-10-20"> <desc versionDate="2017-02-07" xml:lang="en">contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <gi>TEI</gi> elements, each containing a single text header and a text.</desc> <desc type="deprecationInfo" xml:lang="en">The <gi>TEI</gi> element is now permitted to nest directly within a <gi>TEI</gi> element. Thus the recommended encoding of a corpus is to use <gi>TEI</gi> with a <att>type</att> of <val>corpus</val> as the outermost element of a set of TEI documents that are to be</pre>

	<pre>treated as a single corpus.</desc> <!-- ... --> </elementSpec></pre>
Member of	model.descLike model.labelLike
Contained by	core: add corr del desc gap graphic head hi item l lg list listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg sic title unclear figures: figDesc figure header: category change handNote licence scriptNote taxonomy linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates typeNote textstructure: body div transcr: damage supplied surface
May contain	core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc email expan foreign hi label list listBibl measure name num q quote ref term title header: idno msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am ex subst character data
Note	When used in a specification element such as <elementSpec>, TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.
Example	<pre><desc>contains a brief description of the purpose and intended use of a documentation element, or a brief characterisation of a parent entity </desc></pre>
Schematron	A <desc> with a @type of deprecationInfo should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when <desc> is a valid child of that element.
	<pre><sch:rule context="tei:desc[@type eq 'deprecationInfo']"> <sch:assert test=".//@validUntil">Information about a deprecation should only be present in a specification element that is being deprecated: that is, only an element that has a @validUntil attribute should have a child <desc type="deprecationInfo">.</sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element desc { att.global.attributes, att.translatable.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute type { text }?, macro.limitedContent }</pre>
---------------------------	---

2.1.46. <dim>

<p><dim> contains any single measurement forming part of a dimensional specification of some sort. [10.3.4. Dimensions]</p>	
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	model.measureLike
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	Character data only
Note	The specific elements <width> , <height> , and <depth> should be used in preference to this generic element wherever appropriate.
Example	<pre><dim extent="4.67 in" type="circumference"/></pre>
Content model	

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element dim
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  macro.xtext
}

```

2.1.47. <dimensions>

<dimensions> contains a dimensional specification. [10.3.4. Dimensions]

Module	msdescription — Schema																
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))</p> <p>@type indicates which aspect of the object is being measured.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype data.enumerated</p> <p>Suggested binding</p> <table> <tr> <td>values</td> <td>The dimensions concerns the binding(s)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>include:</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>folia</td> <td>The dimensions concerns the folia as a whole</td> </tr> <tr> <td>leaf</td> <td>The dimensions concerns the leaf</td> </tr> <tr> <td>line-height</td> <td>The dimensions concerns the line-height</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ruled</td> <td>The dimensions concerns the ruling</td> </tr> <tr> <td>written</td> <td>The dimensions concerns the written area</td> </tr> <tr> <td>other</td> <td>The dimensions concerns other/unspecified aspects (you may also provide a custom value)</td> </tr> </table>	values	The dimensions concerns the binding(s)	include:		folia	The dimensions concerns the folia as a whole	leaf	The dimensions concerns the leaf	line-height	The dimensions concerns the line-height	ruled	The dimensions concerns the ruling	written	The dimensions concerns the written area	other	The dimensions concerns other/unspecified aspects (you may also provide a custom value)
values	The dimensions concerns the binding(s)																
include:																	
folia	The dimensions concerns the folia as a whole																
leaf	The dimensions concerns the leaf																
line-height	The dimensions concerns the line-height																
ruled	The dimensions concerns the ruling																
written	The dimensions concerns the written area																
other	The dimensions concerns other/unspecified aspects (you may also provide a custom value)																
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc																
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace																

	<p>publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	msdescription: depth dim height width
Note	Contains no more than one of each of the specialized elements used to express a three-dimensional object's height, width, and depth, combined with any number of other kinds of dimensional specification.
Example	<pre><dimensions type="leaves"> <height scope="range">157-160</height> <width>105</width> </dimensions> <dimensions type="ruled"> <height scope="most">90</height> <width scope="most">48</width> </dimensions> <dimensions unit="in"> <height>12</height> <width>10</width> </dimensions></pre>
Example	<p>This element may be used to record the dimensions of any text-bearing object, not necessarily a codex. For example:</p> <pre><dimensions type="panels"> <height scope="all">7004</height> <width scope="all">1803</width> <dim type="relief" unit="mm">345</dim> </dimensions></pre> <p>This might be used to show that the inscribed panels on some (imaginary) monument are all the same size (7004 by 1803 cm) and stand out from the rest of the monument by 345 mm.</p>
Example	<p>When simple numeric quantities are involved, they may be expressed on the @quantity attribute of any or all of the child elements, as in the following example:</p> <pre><dimensions type="leaves"> <height scope="range">157-160</height> <width quantity="105"/> </dimensions> <dimensions type="ruled"> <height quantity="90" scope="most" unit="cm"/> <width quantity="48" scope="most" unit="cm"/> </dimensions></pre>

	<pre><dimensions unit="in"> <height quantity="12"/> <width quantity="10"/> </dimensions></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="//tei:dimensions"> <sch:assert role="error" test="@unit"> The unit of measurement must be specified in the unit attribute on the dimensions element </sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre>
Schematron	<pre><s:report test="count(tei:width)> 1">The element <s:name/> may appear once only </s:report> <s:report test="count(tei:height)> 1">The element <s:name/> may appear once only </s:report> <s:report test="count(tei:depth)> 1">The element <s:name/> may appear once only </s:report></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <elementRef key="dim"/> <classRef key="model.dimLike"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element dimensions { att.global.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, attribute type { "binding" "folia" "leaf" "line-height" "ruled" "written" "other" }?, (dim model.dimLike)* }</pre>

2.1.48. <distributor>

<distributor> supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.

[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of	model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency
Contained by	core: bibl header: publicationStmt
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<pre><distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor> <distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element distributor { att.global.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.49. <district>

<district> contains the name of any kind of subdivision of a settlement, such as a parish, ward, or other administrative or geographic unit. [13.2.3. Place Names]

Module	namesdates — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp,

	<p>@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))</p>
Member of	model.placeNamePart
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><placeName> <district type="ward">Jericho</district> <settlement>Oxford</settlement> </placeName></pre>
Example	<pre><placeName> <district type="area">South Side</district> <settlement>Chicago</settlement> </placeName></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/></pre>

	<pre></content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element district { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.datable.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.50. <div>

<div> (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1. Divisions of the Body]	
Module	textstructure — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.re @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @n @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.globa (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragme att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.divLike
Contained by	textstructure: body div
May contain	core: bibl cit desc gap head label lb lg list listBibl note p pb q quote derived-module-msdesc: include figures: figure msdescription: msDesc textstructure: div transcr: fw
Example	<pre><body> <div type="part"> <head>Fallacies of Authority</head> <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the obj repress all exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p> <div n="1" type="chapter"> <head>The Nature of Authority</head> <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object greatest happiness of the greatest number [...]</p> <div n="1.1" type="section"> <head>Analysis of Authority</head> <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influen attached to authority [...] </p> </div> <div n="1.2" type="section"> <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head> <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [</div> </div></pre>

```
</div>
</body>
```

Schematron

```
<s:report test="ancestor::tei:l"> Abstract model violation: Lines may
higher-level structural elements such as div.
</s:report>
```

Schematron

```
<s:report test="ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab and
not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: p and ab
contain higher-level structural elements such as div.
</s:report>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<sequence>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.divTop"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0">
<alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
<alternate>
<classRef key="model.divLike"/>
<classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.common"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<alternate>
<classRef key="model.divLike"/>
<classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</sequence>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element div
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.divLike.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    att.declaring.attributes,
    att.written.attributes,
    (
        ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
        (
            (
                ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.glob
                |
                ( ( model.common, model.global* )+,
                  ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.g
                )
            ),
            ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
        )?
    }
}
```

2.1.51. <edition>

<edition> describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [2.2.2. The Edition Statement]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.biblPart
Contained by	core: bibl header: editionStmt
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	

	<pre><edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date> </edition> <edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element edition { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.52. <editionStmt>

<p><editionStmt> (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2. The File Description]</p>	
Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	header: fileDesc
May contain	core: author editor p respStmt header: edition funder principal sponsor
Example	<pre><editionStmt> <edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition> <respStmt> <resp>Adapted by </resp> <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name> </respStmt> </editionStmt></pre>
Example	<pre><editionStmt> <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date> </p> </editionStmt></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <sequence></pre>

```

<elementRef key="edition"/>
<classRef key="model.respLike"
  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element editionStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( edition, model.respLike* ) )
}

```

2.1.53. <editor>

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))
Member of	model.respLike
Contained by	core: bibl series header: editionStmt titleStmt msdescription: msItem
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Note	A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.
Example	<pre><editor role="Technical_Editor">Ron Van den Branden</editor></pre>

	<pre><editor role="Editor-in-Chief">John Walsh</editor> <editor role="Managing_Editor">Anne Baillot</editor></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element editor { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.54. <email>

<p><email> (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered. [3.5.2. Addresses]</p>	
Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>)
Member of	<code>model.addressLike</code>
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p>

	<p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Note	The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in RFC 2822
Example	<pre><email>membership@tei-c.org</email></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element email { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.55. `<encodingDesc>`

`<encodingDesc>` (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global</code> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<code>att.global.rendition</code> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<code>att.global.linking</code> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<code>att.global.facs</code> (@facs)) (<code>att.global.change</code> (@change)) (<code>att.global.responsibility</code> (@cert, @resp)) (<code>att.global.source</code> (@source))
Member of	<code>model.teiHeaderPart</code>
Contained by	<code>header: teiHeader</code>
May contain	<code>core: p</code> <code>header: classDecl projectDesc</code>
Example	<pre><encodingDesc> <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No formatting or layout information preserved.</p> </encodingDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content></pre>

```

<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element encodingDesc
{
    att.global.attributes,
    ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+
}

```

2.1.56. <ex>

<ex> (editorial expansion) contains a sequence of letters added by an editor or transcriber when expanding an abbreviation. [11.3.1.2. Abbreviation and Expansion]

Module	transcr — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item i label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	Character data only
Example	<pre> The address is Southmoor <choice> <expan>R<ex>oa</ex>d</expan> <abbr>Rd</abbr> </choice> </pre>

Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element ex { att.global.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, macro.xtext }</pre>

2.1.57. <expan>

<p><expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]</p>	
Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.fac (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

	<p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	The content of this element should be the expanded abbreviation, usually (but not always) a complete word or phrase. The <code><ex></code> element provided by the transcr module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.
Note	If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the <code><editorialDecl></code> , either with a <code><normalization></code> element or a <code><p></code> .
Example	<pre>The address is Southmoor <choice> <expan>Road</expan> <abbr>Rd</abbr> </choice></pre>
Example	<pre><choice xml:lang="la"> <abbr>Imp</abbr> <expan>Imperial<ex>erator</ex> </expan> </choice></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element expan { att.global.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.58. `<explicit>`

`<explicit>` contains the *explicit* of a item, that is, the closing words of the text proper, exclusive of any rubric or colophon which might follow it. [10.6.1. The `msItem` and `msItemStruct` Elements]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> <code>(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition))</code> (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select))</code> (<code>att.global.facs (@facis))</code> (<code>att.global.change (@change))</code> (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))</code> <code>(att.global.source (@source))</code> <code>att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code> <code>att.msExcerpt (@defective)</code>

Member of	model.msQuoteLike
Contained by	msdescription: msItem msItemStruct
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<pre> <explicit>sed libera nos a malo.</explicit> <rubric>Hic explicit oratio qui dicitur dominica.</rubric> <explicit type="defective">ex materia quasi et forma sibi proporti<gap/> </explicit> <explicit type="reverse">saued be shulle that doome of day the at </explicit></pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element explicit { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.msExcerpt.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.59. <extent>

<extent> describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. Type and Extent of File 2.2. The File Description 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.7.1. Object Description]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of	model.biblPart
Contained by	core: bibl header: fileDesc msdescription: supportDesc
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<pre><extent>3200 sentences</extent> <extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent> <extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent></pre>
Example	The <measure> element may be used to supply normalised or machine tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned. <pre><extent> <measure quantity="4.2" unit="MiB">About four megabytes</measure> <measure quantity="245" unit="pages">245 pages of source material</measure> </extent></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element extent { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.60. <facsimile>

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module	transcr — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.link (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf

	<p>@next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.attrs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@dec</p>
Member of	model.resourceLike
Contained by	textstructure: TEI
May contain	core: graphic figures: formula transcr: surface surfaceGrp
Example	<pre><facsimile> <graphic url="page1.png"/> <surface> <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/> <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/> </surface> <graphic url="page3.png"/> <graphic url="page4.png"/> </facsimile></pre>
Example	<pre><facsimile> <surface lrx="200" lry="300" ulx="0" uly="0"> <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/> </surface> </facsimile></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <sequence> <elementRef key="front" minOccurs="0"/> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/> <elementRef key="surface"/> <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/> </alternate> <elementRef key="back" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element facsimile { att.global.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, (front?, (model.graphicLike surface surfaceGrp)+, back? }</pre>

2.1.61. <fallback>

<fallback> Wrapper for fallback elements if an XInclude fails

Namespace	http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude
Module	derived-module-msdesc
Contained by	derived-module-msdesc: include
May contain	Character data only
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"> <textNode/> <anyElement/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element fallback { text anyElement-fallback }</pre>

2.1.62. <figDesc>

<**figDesc**> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

Module	figures — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	figures: figure
May contain	core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc email expan foreign hi label list listBibl measure name num q quote ref term title header: idno msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am ex subst character data
Note	This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent < figure > element ; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes.
Example	<pre><figure> <graphic url="emblem1.png"/></pre>

	<pre> <head>Emblemi d'Amore</head> <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc> </figure> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element figDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent } </pre>

2.1.63. <figure>

<p><figure> groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure. [14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]</p>	
Module	figures — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.global
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp series sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figure</p> <p>header: authority change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>textstructure: body div text</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied surface surfaceGrp zone</p>
May contain	<p>core: bibl cit desc gap graphic head l label lb lg list listBibl note p pb q quote</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: include</p> <p>figures: figDesc figure formula</p> <p>msdescription: msDesc</p>

	transcr: fw
Example	<pre><figure> <head>The View from the Bridge</head> <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc> <graphic scale="0.5" url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png"/> </figure></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <classRef key="model.headLike"/> <classRef key="model.common"/> <elementRef key="figDesc"/> <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> <classRef key="model.divBottom"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element figure { att.global.attributes, att.placement.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.written.attributes, (model.headLike model.common figDesc model.graphicLike model.global model.divBottom)* }</pre>

2.1.64. <fileDesc>

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	header: teiHeader

May contain	header: editionStmt extent publicationStmt sourceDesc titleStmt
Note	The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.
Example	<pre> <fileDesc> <titleStmt> <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt> <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p> </publicationStmt> <sourceDesc> <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p> </sourceDesc> </fileDesc> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <sequence> <elementRef key="titleStmt"/> <elementRef key="editionStmt" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/> <elementRef key="seriesStmt" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="notesStmt" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> <elementRef key="sourceDesc" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element fileDesc { att.global.attributes, ((titleStmt, editionStmt?, extent?, publicationStmt, seriesStmt?, notesStmt?), sourceDesc+) } </pre>

2.1.65. <filiation>

<p><filiation> contains information concerning the manuscript or other object's <i>filiation</i>, i.e. its relationship to other surviving manuscripts or other objects of the same text or contents, its <i>photographs</i>, <i>antigraphs</i> and <i>apographs</i>. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]</p>	
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.msItemPart
Contained by	msdescription: msItem msItemStruct
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre> <msContents> <msItem> <title>Beljakovski sbornik</title> <filiation type="photograph">Bulgarian</filiation> <filiation type="antigraph">Middle Bulgarian</filiation> <filiation type="apograph"> <ref target="#DN17">Dujchev N 17</ref> </filiation> </msItem> </msContents> <!-- ... --> <msDesc xml:id="DN17"> <msIdentifier> <settlement>Faraway</settlement> </msIdentifier> <!-- ... --> </msDesc> </pre> <p>In this example, the reference to 'Dujchev N17' includes a link to some other manuscript description which has the identifier DN17.</p>
Example	<pre> <msItem> <title>Guan-ben</title> <filiation> <p>The "Guan-ben" was widely current among mathematicians in the Qing dynasty, and "Zhao Qimei version" was also read. It is therefore difficult to know the correct filiation path to follow.</p> </filiation> </pre>

The study of this era is much indebted to Li Di. We explain the outline of his conclusion here. Kong Guangsen (1752-1786) (17) was from the same town as Dai Zhen, so he obtained "Guan-ben" from him and studied it(18). Li Huang (d. 1811) (19) took part in editing Si Ku Quan Shu, so he must have had "Guan-ben". Then Zhang Dunren (1754-1834) obtained this version, and studied "Da Yan Zong Shu Shu" (The General Dayan Computation). He wrote Jiu Yi Suan Shu (Mathematics Searching for One, 1803) based on this version of Shu Xue Jiu Zhang (20).</p>
<p>One of the most important persons in restoring our knowledge concerning the filiation of these books was Li Rui (1768(21)-1817) (see his biography). ... only two volumes remain of this manuscript, as far as chapter 6 (chapter 3 part 2) p.13, that is, question 2 of "Huan Tian San Ji" (square of three loops), which later has been lost.</p>
</filiation>
</msItem>
<!--http://www2.nkfust.edu.tw/~jochi/ed1.htm-->

Content model

```
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element filiation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.specialPara
}
```

2.1.66. <finalRubric>

<finalRubric> contains the string of words that denotes the end of a text division, often with an assertion as to its author and title, usually set off from the text itself by red ink, by a different size or type of script, or by some other such visual device. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facss)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective)
Member of	model.msQuoteLike
Contained by	msdescription: msItem msItemStruct
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear

	<p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<pre><finalRubric>Explicit le romans de la Rose ou l'art d'amours est toute enclose.</finalRubric> <finalRubric>ok lúkv ver þar Brennu-Nials savgv</finalRubric></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element finalRubric { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.msExcerpt.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.67. <foliation>

	<p><foliation> describes the numbering system or systems used to count the leaves or pages in a codex or similar object. [10.7.1.4. Foliation]</p>
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	msdescription: supportDesc
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p>

	<p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><foliation>Contemporary foliation in red roman numerals in the centre of the outer margin.</foliation></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element foliation { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.68. <foreign>

<p><foreign> identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions]</p>	
Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.emphLike
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item i label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p>

	<p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	<p>The global @xml:lang attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1. Language Identification.</p> <p>This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global @xml:lang attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.</p> <p>The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.</p>
Example	<div style="background-color: #e0f2e0; padding: 10px;"> <p>This is heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis philosophicus</foreign>?</p> </div>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element foreign { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.69. <forename>

<forename> contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]	
Module	namesdates — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)

	(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.persNamePart
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<pre><persName> <roleName>Ex-President</roleName> <forename>George</forename> <surname>Bush</surname> </persName></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element forename { att.global.attributes,</pre>

```

        att.personal.attributes,
        att.typed.attributes,
        macro.phraseSeq
    }
}

```

2.1.70. <formula>

<formula> contains a mathematical or other formula. [14.2. Formulæ and Mathematical Expressions]	
Module	figures — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.graphicLike
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del editor email expand foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figure formula header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: damage facsimile fw supplied surface zone
May contain	core: graphic hi figures: formula character data
Example	<pre><formula notation="tex">\$E=mc^2\$</formula></pre>
Example	<pre><formula notation="none">E=mc<hi rend="sup">2</hi></formula></pre>
Example	<pre><formula notation="mathml"> <m:math> <m:mi>E</m:mi> <m:mo>=</m:mo> <m:mi>m</m:mi> <m:msup> <m:mrow></pre>

```

<m:mi>c</m:mi>
</m:mrow>
<m:mrow>
<m:mn>2</m:mn>
</m:mrow>
</m:msup>
</m:math>
</formula>

```

Content model

```

<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
<classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element formula
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.notated.attributes,
  ( text | model.graphicLike | model.hiLike )*
}

```

2.1.71. <funder>

<funder> (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of	model.respLike
Contained by	core: bibl header: editionStmt titleStmt msdescription: msItem
May contain	core: abbr address choice date email expan foreign gap hi lb measure name note num pb ref term title figures: figure header: idno msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am ex fw subst

	character data
Note	Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from <i>sponsors</i> (see element < sponsor >), who provide intellectual support and authority.
Example	<pre> <funder>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal agency</funder> <funder>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities</funder> <funder>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</funder> <funder>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada</funder></pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element funder { att.global.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }</pre>

2.1.72. <fw>

<fw> (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page. [11.6. Headers, Footers, and Similar Matter]

Module	transcr — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> <code>(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition))</code> (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp,</code> <code>@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select))</code> (<code>att.global.facs</code> <code>(@facs))</code> (<code>att.global.change (@change))</code> (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))</code> <code>(att.global.source (@source))</code> <code>att.placement (@place)</code> <code>att.written (@hand)</code></p> <p>@type classifies the material encoded according to some useful typology.</p> <p>Status Recommended</p> <p>Datatype data.enumerated</p> <p>Sample</p> <p>header values a running title at the top of the page</p> <p>include: page footer a running title at the bottom of the page</p> <p>pageNum (page number) a page number or foliation symbol</p> <p>lineNum (line number) a line number, either of prose or poetry</p>

	<p>sig (signature) a signature or gathering symbol</p> <p>catch (catchword) a catch-word</p>
Member of	model.milestoneLike
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp series sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figure</p> <p>header: authority change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>textstructure: body div text</p> <p>transcr: damage fw subst supplied surface surfaceGrp zone</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Note	Where running heads are consistent throughout a chapter or section, it is usually more convenient to relate them to the chapter or section, e.g. by use of the @rend attribute. The <fw> element is intended for cases where the running head changes from page to page, or where details of page layout and the internal structure of the running heads are of paramount importance.
Example	<pre><fw place="bottom" type="sig">C3</fw></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element fw { att.global.attributes, att.placement.attributes, att.written.attributes, attribute type { text }?, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>
---------------------------	--

2.1.73. <gap>

<gap> indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>) <code>att.timed (@start, @end)</code> <code>att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)</code> <code>att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)</code> (<code>att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)</code>)</p> <p>@reason gives the reason for omission Status optional Datatype occurrences of <code>teidata.enumerated</code> separated by whitespace Suggested values Deleted Editorial for features omitted from transcription due to editorial policy illegible inaudible irrelevant sampling</p> <p>@agent in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified. Status optional Datatype <code>teidata.enumerated</code> Rubbing values damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges include: leaf edges Mildew values damage results from mildew on the leaf surface smoke values damage results from smoke</p>
Member of	<code>model.global.edit</code>
Contained	core: <code>abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del</code>

by	<p>editor email expand foreign head hi item I label lg list measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp series sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figure</p> <p>header: authority change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>textstructure: body div text</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied surface surfaceGrp zone</p>
May contain	<p>core: desc</p>
Note	<p>The <code><gap></code>, <code><unclear></code>, and <code></code> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <code><damage></code> and <code><supplied></code> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.</p> <p>The <code><gap></code> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <code></code> in the case of deliberate deletion.</p>
Example	<pre><gap quantity="4" reason="illegible" unit="chars"/></pre>
Example	<pre><gap quantity="1" reason="sampling" unit="essay"/></pre>
Example	<pre> <gap atLeast="4" atMost="8" reason="illegible" unit="chars"/> </pre>
Example	<pre><gap extent="several lines" reason="lost"/></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <classRef key="model.descLike"/></pre>

```

<classRef key="model.certLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element gap
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.timed.attributes,
    att.editLike.attributes,
    att.dimensions.attributes,
    attribute reason
    {
        list
        {
            (
                "cancelled"
                "deleted"
                "editorial"
                "illegible"
                "inaudible"
                "irrelevant"
                "sampling"
            )+
        }
    }?,
    attribute agent { text }?,
    ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}

```

2.1.74. <geo>

<geo> (geographical coordinates) contains any expression of a set of geographic coordinates, representing point, line, or area on the surface of the earth in some notation. [13.3.4.1. Varieties of Location]

Module	namesdates — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change, @cancel)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decDecl, @decDeclLang)
Member of	model.measureLike
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email emailLang foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote resp sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence princip scriptNote sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custE decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNota objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stam summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname

	transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	Character data only
Note	Uses of <code><geo></code> can be associated with a coordinate system, defined by a <code><geoDecl></code> element supplied in the TEI header, using the <code>@decls</code> attribute. If no such link is made, the assumption is that the content of each <code><geo></code> element will be a pair of numbers separated by whitespace and interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System.
Example	<pre> <geoDecl datum="WGS84" xml:id="WGS">World Geodetic System</geoDecl> <geoDecl datum="OSGB36" xml:id="OS">Ordnance Survey</geoDecl> <!-- ... --> <location> <desc>A tombstone plus six lines of Anglo-Saxon text, built into the west tower (on the south side of the archway, at 8 ft. above the ground) of the Church of St. Mary-le-Wigford in Lincoln.</desc> <geo decls="#WGS">53.226658 -0.541254</geo> <geo decls="#OS">SK 97481 70947</geo> </location> </pre>
Example	<pre><geo>41.687142 -74.870109</geo></pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <textNode/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element geo { att.global.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, te </pre>

2.1.75. `<geogFeat>`

`<geogFeat>` (geographical feature name) contains a common noun identifying some geographical feature contained within a geographic name, such as valley, mount, etc. [13.2.3. Place Names]

Module	namesdates — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.datable</code> (@calendar, @period) (<code>att.datable.w3c</code> (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (<code>att.datable.iso</code> (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (<code>att.datable.custom</code> (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) (<code>att.editLike</code> (@evidence, @instant)) (<code>att.global</code> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)) (<code>att.global.rendition</code> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<code>att.global.linking</code> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<code>att.global.facs</code> (@facs)) (<code>att.global.change</code> (@change)) (<code>att.global.responsibility</code> (@cert, @resp)) (<code>att.global.source</code> (@source)) (<code>att.naming</code> (@role, @nymRef)) (<code>att.canonical</code> (@key, @ref)) (<code>att.typed</code> (@type, @subtype)) (<code>att.dimensions</code> (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (<code>att.ranging</code> (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))

Member of	model.offsetLike
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><geogName> The <geogFeat>vale</geogFeat> of White Horse</geogName></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element geogFeat { att.datable.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.76. <geogName>

<p><geogName> (geographical name) identifies a name associated with some geographical feature such as Windrush Valley or Mount Sinai. [13.2.3. Place Names]</p>	
Module	namesdates — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.placeNamePart
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item I label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><geogName> <geogFeat>Mount</geogFeat> <name>Sinai</name> </geogName></pre>
Content model	

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element geogName
{
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

2.1.77. <graphic>

<**graphic**> indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components 11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) (att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls)
Member of	model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del editor email expand foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figure formula header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: damage facsimile fw supplied surface zone
May contain	core: desc
Note	<p>The @MimeType attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the @url attribute.</p> <p>Within the body of a text, a <graphic> element indicates the presence of a graphic component in the source itself. Within the context of a <facsimile> or <sourceDoc> element, however, a <graphic> element provides an additional digital representation of some part of the source being encoded.</p>

Example	<pre> <figure> <graphic url="fig1.png"/> <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head> <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc> </figure> </pre>
Example	<pre> <facsimile> <surfaceGrp n="leaf1"> <surface> <graphic url="page1.png"/> </surface> <surface> <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/> <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/> </surface> </surfaceGrp> </facsimile> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <classRef key="model.descLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element graphic { att.global.attributes, att.media.attributes, att.resourced.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, model.descLike* } </pre>

2.1.78. <handDesc>

<handDesc> (description of hands) contains a description of all the different hands used in a manuscript or other object. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]	
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>) @hands specifies the number of distinct hands identified within the manuscript Status Optional Data type <code>data.count</code>

Member of	model.physDescPart
Contained by	msdescription: physDesc
May contain	core: p header: handNote msdescription: summary
Example	<pre><handDesc> <handNote scope="major">Written throughout in <term>angelicana formata</term> .</handNote> </handDesc></pre>
Example	<pre><handDesc hands="2"> <p>The manuscript is written in two contemporary hands, otherwise unknown, but clearly those of practised scribes. Hand I writes ff. 1r-22v and hand II ff. 23 and 24. Some scholars, notably Verner Dahlerup and Hreinn Benediktsson, have argued for a third hand on f. 24, but the evidence for this is insubstantial.</p> </handDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <sequence> <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="handNote" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </sequence> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element handDesc { att.global.attributes, attribute hands { text }?, (model.pLike+ (summary?, handNote+)) }</pre>

2.1.79. <handNote>

<handNote> (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript.
[\[10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations\]](#)

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)

	(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)
Contained by	msdescription: handDesc
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<pre><handNote scope="sole"> <p>Written in insular phase II half-uncial with interlinear Old English gloss in an Anglo-Saxon pointed minuscule.</p> </handNote></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element handNote { att.global.attributes, att.handFeatures.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.80. <head>

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs

	(@facts)) (@att.global.change (@change)) (@att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (@att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.headLike
Contained by	core: lg list listBibl figures: figure msdescription: msDesc msFrag msPart textstructure: body div
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Note	The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.
Example	The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or <i>incipits</i> may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer> , as in this example:
	<pre> <div1 n="I" type="book"> <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head> <div2 type="section"> <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history. </head> <p>Proposing as I do ...</p> <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve years passed.</p> <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</trailer> </div2> </div1> </pre>
Example	When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. the heading "Secunda conclusio") they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can be captured with the @place attribute.
	<pre> <div type="subsection"> <head place="margin">Secunda conclusio</head> </pre>

```

<p>
  <lb n="1251"/>
  <hi rend="large">Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem
ab obiectis<supplied>. </supplied>
</hi>
<lb n="1252"/>Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam
habititudinem ad proprium
  [...]
</p>
</div>

```

Example The `<head>` element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

With a few exceptions, connectives are equally useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument. `<list rend="bulleted">`

```

<head>Connectives</head>
<item>above</item>
<item>accordingly</item>
<item>across from</item>
<item>adjacent to</item>
<item>again</item>
<item>
<!-- ... -->
</item>
</list>

```

Content model

```

<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<textNode/>
<elementRef key="lg"/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.inter"/>
<classRef key="model.lLike"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element head
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  (
    text
    lg
    model.gLike
    model.phrase
    model.inter
    model.lLike
    model.global
  )*
}

```

2.1.81. <height>

<p><height> contains a measurement measured along the axis at a right angle to the bottom of the object. [10.3.4. Dimensions]</p>	
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	model.dimLike model.measureLike
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	Character data only
Example	<pre><height quantity="7" unit="in"/></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element height { att.global.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, macro.xtext }</pre>

2.1.82. <heraldry>

<p><heraldry> contains a heraldic formula or phrase, typically found as part of a blazon, coat of arms, etc. [10.3.8. Heraldry]</p>	
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><p>Ownership stamp (xvii cent.) on i recto with the arms <heraldry>A bull passant within a bordure bezanty, in chief a crescent for difference</heraldry> [Cole], crest, and the legend <q>Cole Deum</q>. </p></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema	[REDACTED]

Declaration	<pre>element heraldry { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>
--------------------	--

2.1.83. <hi>

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons cc claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Lan

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @att.global.facs (@facs))</code> (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @att.global.source (@source))</code> <code>att.written (@hand)</code>)
Member of	<code>model.hiLike</code>
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email emailI itemI label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc formula</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principle sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custList explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout locus material musicNotation origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied zone</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expand foreign gap graphic h listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<pre><hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi> that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant, in consideration of the said intended marriage ...</pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/></pre>

	</content>
Schema Declaration	element hi { att.global.attributes, att.written.attributes, macro }

2.1.84. <history>

<history> groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [1 History]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	msdescription: msDesc msFrag msPart
May contain	core: p msdescription: acquisition origin provenance summary
Example	<pre> <history> <origin> <p>Written in Durham during the mid twelfth century.</p> </origin> <provenance> <p>Recorded in two medieval catalogues of the books belonging to Durham Priory, made in 1391 and 1405.</p> </provenance> <provenance> <p>Given to W. Olleyf by William Ebchester, Prior (1446-56) and later belonged to Henry Dalton, Prior of Holy Island (Lindisfarne) according to inscriptions on ff. 4v and 5.</p> </provenance> <acquisition> <p>Presented to Trinity College in 1738 by Thomas Gale and his son Roger.</p> </acquisition> </history> </pre>

Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <sequence> <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="origin" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="provenance" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="acquisition" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> </alternate> </content> </pre>
----------------------	---

```
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element history
{
    att.global.attributes,
    ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, origin?, provenance*, acquisition
}
```

2.1.85. <idno>

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [13.3.1. Basic Principles 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>) <code>att.sortable (@sortKey)</code> <code>att.datable (@calendar, @period)</code> (<code>att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)</code>) (<code>att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)</code>) (<code>att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)</code>) <code>att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code></p> <p>@type categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.</p> <p>Derive<code>att.typed</code> from</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data<code>type</code> data.enumerated</p> <p>Suggest<code>ISBN</code></p> <p>values International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the International ISBN Agency.</p> <p>ISSN International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.</p> <p>DOI Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.</p> <p>URI Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource which usually contains indication of the means of accessing that resource, the name of its host, and its filepath.</p>

	<p>VIAF A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.</p> <p>ESTC English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.</p> <p>OCLC OCLC control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union catalog for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative.</p>
Member of	model.msItemPart model.nameLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc edito email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp series sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote idno licence principal publicationStmt scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>header: idno</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	<idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for @type on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.
Example	<pre> <idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno> <idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno> <idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno> <idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno> <idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno> <idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno> <idno type="Wing">C695</idno> <idno type="oldCat"> <g ref="#sym"/>345 </idno> </pre> <p>In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym.</p>

Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <elementRef key="idno"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element idno { att.global.attributes, att.sortable.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, attribute type { "ISBN" "ISSN" "DOI" "URI" "VIAF" "ESTC" "OCLC" }?, (text model.gLike idno)* }</pre>

2.1.86. <incipit>

<incipit> contains the *incipit* of a manuscript or similar object item, that is the opening words of the text proper, exclusive of any *rubric* which might precede it, of sufficient length to identify the work uniquely; such incipits were, in former times, frequently used a means of reference to a work, in place of a title. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective)
Member of	model.msQuoteLike
Contained by	msdescription: msItem msItemStruct
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data

Example	<pre><incipit>Pater noster qui es in celis</incipit> <incipit defective="true">statem dedit hominibus alleluia.</incipit> <incipit type="biblical">Ghif ons huden onse dagelix broet</incipit> <incipit>O ongehoerde gewerdighe christi</incipit> <incipit type="lemma">Firmiter</incipit> <incipit>Ideo dicit firmiter quia ordo fidei nostre probari non potest</incipit></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element incipit { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.msExcerpt.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.87. <include>

<include> The W3C XInclude element	
Namespace	http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude
Module	derived-module-msdesc
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@href pointer to the resource being included Status Optional Data type: <code>data.pointer</code></p> <p>@parse Status Optional Legakml values [Default] are: <code>text</code></p> <p>@xpointer Status Optional Data type: <code>data.text</code></p> <p>@encoding Status Optional Data type: <code>data</code></p> <p>@accept Status Optional Data type: <code>data.text</code></p> <p>@accept-charset Status Optional</p>

	<p>@accept-language</p> <p>Status: Optional</p> <p>Data type: text</p>
Member of	model.common model.teiHeaderPart
Contained by	figures: figure header: teiHeader textstructure: body div
May contain	derived-module-msdesc: fallback
Content model	<pre><content> <elementRef key="fallback" maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="0"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element include { attribute href { text }?, attribute parse { "xml" "text" }?, attribute xpointer { text }?, attribute encoding { text }?, attribute accept { text }?, attribute accept-charset { text }?, attribute accept-language { text }?, fallback? }</pre>

2.1.88. <institution>

<institution> contains the name of an organization such as a university or library, with which a manuscript or other object is identified, generally its holding institution. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))
Contained by	msdescription: altIdentifier msIdentifier
May contain	Character data only
Example	<pre><msIdentifier> <settlement>Oxford</settlement> <institution>University of Oxford</institution></pre>

	<pre><repository>Bodleian Library</repository> <idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno> </msIdentifier></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element institution { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, macro.xtext }</pre>

2.1.89. <item>

<p><item> contains one component of a list. [3.7. Lists 2.6. The Revision Description]</p>	
Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)
Contained by	core: list
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	<p>May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.</p> <p>Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global @n attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the @n attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not @n.</p>

Example	<pre> <list rend="numbered"> <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head> <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item> <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</item> <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item> <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item> <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item> <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item> <item> ...</item> </list></pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element item { att.global.attributes, att.sortable.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.90. <keywords>

<p><keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]</p>	
Module	header — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facets (@facets)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>)</p> <p>@scheme identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype <code>data.pointer</code></p>
Contained by	header: <code>textClass</code>
May contain	core: <code>list term</code>
Note	<p>Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within a <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated.</p> <p>If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the @scheme attribute.</p>

Example	<pre><keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net"> <term>Babbage, Charles</term> <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term> </keywords></pre>
Example	<pre><keywords> <term>Fermented beverages</term> <term>Central Andes</term> <term>Schinus molle</term> <term>Molle beer</term> <term>Indigenous peoples</term> <term>Ethnography</term> <term>Archaeology</term> </keywords></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <elementRef key="term" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <elementRef key="list"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element keywords { att.global.attributes, attribute scheme { text }?, (term+ list) }</pre>

2.1.91. <l>

<l> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.12. Pa Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.ren @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @ne @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.fragmentable (@part)
Member of	model.IILike
Contained by	core: add corr del head hi item lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic title unclear figures: figure header: change handNote licence scriptNote linking: seg

	<p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filia layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrog</p> <p>textstructure: body div</p> <p>transcr: damage supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphi list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp mater objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName pe placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<pre><1 met="x/x/x/x/x/" real="/xx/x/x/x/">Shall I compare thee to a summer </1></pre>
Schematron	<pre><s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(./tei:note//tei:l[. = current()])]> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain lines or lg elements. </s:report></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.inter"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element l { att.global.attributes, att.fragmentable.attributes, (text model.gLike model.phrase model.inter model.gl }</pre>

2.1.92. <label>

<label> contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a

list or glossary. [3.7. Lists]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.labelLike
Contained by	core: add corr del desc head hi item l lg list note orig p q quote ref reg sic title unclear figures: figDesc figure header: change handNote licence scriptNote linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates typeNote textstructure: body div transcr: damage supplied surface
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<p>Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global @xml:lang attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:</p> <pre> <list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm"> <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head> <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel> <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem> <label>nu</label> <item xml:lang="en">now</item> <label>lhude</label> <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item> <label>bloweth</label> <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item> <label>med</label> <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item> <label>wude</label> <item xml:lang="en">wood</item> <label>awe</label> <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item> <label>louth</label> <item xml:lang="en">lows</item> <label>sterteth</label> <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit> <ref>Chaucer, K.T. 644</ref> <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote> </cit> </pre>

```

</item>
<label>verteth</label>
<item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
<label>murie</label>
<item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
<label>swik</label>
<item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
<label>naver</label>
<item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>

```

Example	Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's <i>Autobiography</i> . In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the @n attribute on the <item> element:
----------------	--

I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.

```

<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
  <label>(1)</label>
  <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to the press.</item>
  <label>(2) </label>
  <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author and the printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.
</item>
</list>

```

Example	Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:
----------------	--

```

<list type="gloss">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
  <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.
</item>
  <label>June.</label>
  <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod – <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus amori.</quote>
</item>
  <label>August.</label>
  <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>

```

Note that the **<label>** might also appear within the **<item>** rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

Example	Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears <i>within</i> the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.
----------------	--

```

<p>[...]
<lb/>& n'entrer en mauuais & mal-heu-
<lb/>ré mefnage. Or des que le confente-
<lb/>ment des parties y eft le mariage eft
<lb/> arrefté, quoy que de faict il ne foit
<label place="margin">Puiffance maritale
entre les Romains.</label>
<lb/> conformaté. Depuis la conforma-
<lb/>tion du mariage la femme eft fous
<lb/> la puiffance du mary, s'il n'eft efcla-

```

```

<lb/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce
<lb/> cas, la femme, qui a efpouf  vn en-
<lb/>fant de famille, eft fous la puiffance
[...]</p>

```

In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the @type attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label.

Content model

```

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element label
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

2.1.93. <layout>

<layout> describes how text is laid out on the page or surface of the object, including information about a prick, or other evidence of page-preparation techniques. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notation]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rend (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))</p> <p>@topLine Specifies the whether the writing is above top line, below top line, or mixed. Note: This is a customization which is currently part of the TEI P5 standard.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Legal above values The writing is above top line. are: below The writing is below top line.</p> <p>mixed The writing is variously above and below top line with no clear pattern.</p>
@rulingMedium	<p>Specifies the medium used to carry out the ruling. Note: This is a customization which is not currently part of the standard.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype #data.enumerated</p> <p>Suggested values The ruling is carried out using ink.</p>

includeLeadpoint

The ruling is carried out using leadpoint or plummet.

hardpoint

The ruling is carried out using hardpoint or drypoint.

crayon

The ruling is carried out using 'crayon'.

mixed

The ruling is carried out using several methods.

board

The ruling is carried out using a board.

@columns

specifies the number of columns per page

StatusOptional

Datatype2 occurrences of [teidata.count](#) separated whitespace

Note If a single number is given, all pages referer have this number of columns. If two numbers are given, the number of columns per page varies between the values supplied. Where @columns is omitted the number is assumed to be 1. Columns may be independent of page orientation, reading direction, and a single textual @streams has one or more columns.

@streams

(textual streams) indicates the number of streams per page, each of which contains an independent textual stream.

StatusOptional

Datatype2 occurrences of [teidata.count](#) separated whitespace

Note If a single number is given, all pages referer have this number of textual streams. If two numbers are given, the number of textual streams per page varies between the values supplied. Where @streams is omitted the number is assumed to be 1 and unless specified elsewhere the script or file of the source is identical to that used in the document.

@ruledLines

specifies the number of ruled lines per column

StatusOptional

Datatype2 occurrences of [teidata.count](#) separated whitespace

Note If a single number is given, all columns have the same number of ruled lines. If two numbers are given, the number of ruled lines per column varies between the values supplied.

@writtenLines

specifies the number of written lines per column

StatusOptional

Datatype2 occurrences of [teidata.count](#) separated whitespace

Note If a single number is given, all columns have the same number of written lines. If two numbers are given,

	number of written lines per column varies based on the values supplied.
Contained by	msdescription: layoutDesc
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp materia objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName person placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<pre><layout columns="1" ruledLines="25 32">Most pages have between 25 and 32 lines ruled in lead.</layout></pre>
Example	<pre><layout columns="2" ruledLines="42"> <p>2 columns of 42 lines ruled in ink, with central rule between the columns.</p> </layout></pre>
Example	<pre><layout columns="1 2" writtenLines="40 50"> <p>Some pages have 2 columns, with central rule between the columns; each column with between 40 and 50 lines of writing.</p> </layout></pre>
Example	<pre><layout columns="3" streams="3"/> <!-- Further down in document body --&gt; &lt;div type="page"&gt; &lt;ab&gt; &lt;pb/&gt; ---&lt;cb type="top-stream"/&gt; ---&lt;cb type="mid-stream"/&gt; ---&lt;cb type="bottom-stream"/&gt; <!-- cb here for demo purposes --&gt; &lt;/ab&gt; &lt;/div&gt;</pre> </pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>

Schema Declaration

```
element layout
{
    att.global.attributes,
    attribute topLine { "above" | "below" | "mixed" }?,
    attribute rulingMedium
    {
        "ink" | "leadpoint" | "hardpoint" | "crayon" | "mixed" | "},
        attribute columns { list { ? } }?,
        attribute streams { list { ? } }?,
        attribute ruledLines { list { ? } }?,
        attribute writtenLines { list { ? } }?,
        macro.specialPara
    }
}
```

2.1.94. <layoutDesc>

<**layoutDesc**> (layout description) collects the set of layout descriptions applicable to a manuscript or other object. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>)
Contained by	msdescription: <code>objectDesc</code>
May contain	core: <code>p</code> msdescription: <code>layout summary</code>
Example	<pre><layoutDesc> <p>Most pages have between 25 and 32 long lines ruled in lead.</p> </layoutDesc></pre>
Example	<pre><layoutDesc> <layout columns="2" ruledLines="42"> <p> <locus from="f12r" to="f15v"/> 2 columns of 42 lines pricked and ruled in ink, with central rule between the columns.</p> </layout> <layout columns="3"> <p> <locus from="f16"/>Prickings for three columns are visible.</p> </layout> </layoutDesc></pre>
Content model	

```

<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="layout"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element layoutDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, layout+ ) )
}

```

2.1.95. <lb>

<lb> (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)
Member of	model.milestoneLike
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp series sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figure header: authority change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname textstructure: body div text transcr: damage fw subst supplied surface surfaceGrp zone
May contain	Empty element

Note	<p>By convention, <code><lb></code> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The <code>@n</code> attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <code><lb></code> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <code><l></code> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.</p> <p>The <code>@type</code> attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes <code>@break</code>, <code>@ed</code>, or <code>@edRef</code> should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.</p>
Example	<p>This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:</p> <pre><1>Of Mans First Disobedience,<1b ed="1674"/> and<1b ed="1667"/> the Fruit</1> <1>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<1b ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</1> <1>Brought Death into the World,<1b ed="1667"/> and all<1b ed="1674"/> our woe,</1></pre>
Example	<p>This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The <code>@break</code> attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.</p> <pre><titlePart> <1b/>With Additions, ne-<1b break="no"/>ver before Printed. </titlePart></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <empty/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element lb { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.edition.attributes, att.spanning.attributes, att.breaking.attributes, empty }</pre>

2.1.96. `<lg>`

`<lg>` (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, vers [Core Tags for Verse 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module	core — Schema
---------------	---------------

Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition) (att.global.linking) (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @previous) (att.global.facs (@facss)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @signature)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.type (@subtype) att.declaring (@decls)
Member of	macro paraContent model divPart
Contained by	<p>core: add corr del head hi item lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure</p> <p>header: change handNote licence scriptNote</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates type</p> <p>textstructure: body div</p> <p>transcr: damage supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: desc gap head l label lb lg note pb</p> <p>figures: figure</p> <p>transcr: fw</p>
Note	contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.
Example	<pre><lg type="free"> <1>Let me be my own fool</1> <1>of my own making, the sum of it</1> </lg> <lg type="free"> <1>is equivocal.</1> <1>One says of the drunken farmer:</1> </lg> <lg type="free"> <1>leave him lay off it. And this is</1> <1>the explanation.</1> </lg></pre>
Schematron	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg descendant::tei:l descendant::tei:gap)=0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg, or gap element.</sch:assert> </div>
Schematron	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(./tei:note//tei:lg[. = current()])]>A line group may not contain a note.</s:report> </div>
Content model	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <content> <sequence> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <classRef key="model.divTop"/> </alternate> </sequence> </content> </div>

```

<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<alternate>
<classRef key="model.llLike"/>
<classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
<classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
<elementRef key="lg"/>
</alternate>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.llLike"/>
<classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
<classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<elementRef key="lg"/>
</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element lg
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.divLike.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    att.declaring.attributes,
    (
        ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
        ( model.llLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | lg ),
        ( model.llLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | model.global ),
        ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
    )
}

```

2.1.97. <licence>

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Member of	model.availabilityPart
Contained by	header: availability

May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	A <code><licence></code> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The <code>@target</code> attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The <code>@when</code> , <code>@notBefore</code> , <code>@notAfter</code> , <code>@from</code> or <code>@to</code> attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.
Example	<pre><licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence </licence></pre>
Example	<pre><availability> <licence notBefore="2013-01-01" target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"> <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence applies to this document.</p> <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p> </licence> </availability></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element licence { att.global.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.datable.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.98. `<list>`

<list> contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.7. Lists]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.ren (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copy, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facsts)) (att.global.change (@change, @cancel)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortOrder) att.typed (@type, @subtype)</p> <p>@type describes the nature of the items in the list. Derived from att.typed Status optional Data type data.enumerated Suggested values each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a label element preceding the list item. index each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume. instructions each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe. litany each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations typically in a religious ritual. syllogism each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.</p>
	<p>Note Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of @type on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the @rend and @style attributes for these aspects of a list while using @type for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.</p> <p>Note The formal syntax of the element declaration allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.</p>
Member of	model.listLike
Contained by	<p>core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic title unclear</p> <p>figures: figDesc figure</p> <p>header: change handNote keywords licence revisionDesc scriptNote sourceDesc</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary suppSurrogates typeNote</p> <p>textstructure: body div</p>

	transcr: damage supplied
May contain	core: desc gap head item label lb note pb figures: figure transcr: fw
Note	May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and i pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.
Example	<pre> <list rend="numbered"> <item>a butcher</item> <item>a baker</item> <item>a candlestick maker, with <list rend="bulleted"> <item>rings on his fingers</item> <item>bells on his toes</item> </list> </item> </list> </pre>
Example	<pre> <list rend="bulleted" type="sylllogism"> <item>All Cretans are liars.</item> <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item> <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</item> </list> </pre>
Example	<pre> <list rend="simple" type="litany"> <item>God save us from drought.</item> <item>God save us from pestilence.</item> <item>God save us from wickedness in high places.</item> <item>Praise be to God.</item> </list> </pre>
Example	The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939): <pre> <div type="section"> <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head> <list rend="numbered"> <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared if he is caught with the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over eightpence. <list rend="numbered"> <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on the account – or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item> <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself to escape, he is not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item> <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison days, and he may then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety for him that he will desist for ever.</item> </list> </list> </div> </pre>

```

    <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
with his wergild,
        or to bring him back there.</item>
    <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
with his wergild,
        whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and
everyone of those who
        supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.
</item>
    </list>
</item>
<item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these
lordless men, from whom
        no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to
fetch back such a
        person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.
<list rend="numbered">
    <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on
that appointed day,
        he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters
is to strike him
        down as a thief.</item>
    <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him
with his wergild
        or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses
justice and upholds
        his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the
value of the goods and
        120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before
demands justice as
        often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have
done, if he had
        refused him justice.
<list rend="numbered">
    <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his
slave, and it becomes
        known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his
wergild on the first
        occasion if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay
what he owns.</item>
    <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our
reeves, who has been
        an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable
the same.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced
concerning treachery to
        a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he can
deny it or is
        afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
</list>
</div1>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example

```

<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public
council ... and they
confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross
and afterwards
inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus
sign of the Holy
Cross.
<list rend="simple">
    <item>I, Eanwald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church
of York, have
```

```

        subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document wi
the sign of the Holy
    Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Elfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting h
subscribed with
        the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have
subscribed with the
        sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have
subscribed with the
        sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscrik
with thef sign of
        the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed wit
devout will.</item>
    <item>I, Ethelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
    <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the
sign of the Holy
        Cross.</item>
</list>
</p>
```

Schematron

```

<sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']">
<sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should incl
a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item
element</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>
```

Content model

```

<content>
<sequence>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="0">
<classRef key="model.divTop"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<elementRef key="desc"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</alternate>
<alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="item"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
<sequence>
<elementRef key="headLabel"
minOccurs="0"/>
<elementRef key="headItem"
minOccurs="0"/>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="label"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
<elementRef key="item"/>
<classRef key="model.global"
maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</alternate>
```

```

<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
  minOccurs="0">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element list
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type
  {
    "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogis"
  }?,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global | desc* )*,
    (
      ( item, model.global* )+
      | (
        headLabel?,
        headItem?,
        ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+
      )
    ),
    ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
  )
}

```

2.1.99. <listBibl>

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.biblLike
Contained by	core: add cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem sic title unclear figures: figDesc figure header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc taxonomy linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additional additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout msItem msItemStruct musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates typeNote

	<p>textstructure: body div</p> <p>transcr: damage supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: bibl desc head lb listBibl pb</p> <p>msdescription: msDesc</p> <p>transcr: fw</p>
Example	<pre> <listBibl> <head>Works consulted</head> <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990) </bibl> <biblStruct> <analytic> <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title> </analytic> <monogr> <title>The Penny Histories</title> <author>Victor E Neuberg</author> <imprint> <publisher>OUP</publisher> <date>1968</date> </imprint> </monogr> </biblStruct> </listBibl></pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <classRef key="model.headLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="desc" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.biblLike"/> <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/> </alternate> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <elementRef key="relation"/> <elementRef key="listRelation"/> </alternate> </sequence> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element listBibl { att.global.attributes, att.sortable.attributes, att.declarable.attributes, att.typed.attributes, (model.headLike*, desc*, (model.biblLike model.milestoneLike)+, (relation listRelation)*</pre>



2.1.100. <locus>

<**locus**> defines a location within a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object typically as a (possibly discontinuous) sequence of folio references. [10.3.5. References to Locations within a Manuscript]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)</p> <p>@scheme identifies the foliation scheme in terms of which the location is being specified by pointing to some <foliation> element defining it, or to some other equivalent resource. Status optional Datatype data.pointer</p> <p>@from specifies the starting point of the location in a normalized form, typically a page number. Status optional Datatype data.word</p> <p>@to specifies the end-point of the location in a normalized form, typically as a page number. Status optional Datatype data.word</p>
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout locusGrp material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: hi</p> <p>character data</p>

Note	<p>The @target attribute should only be used to point to elements that contain or indicate a transcription of the locus being described, as in the first example above. To associate a <code><locus></code> element with a page image or other comparable representation, the global @facs attribute should be used instead, as shown in the second example. Use of the @target attribute to indicate an image is strongly deprecated. The @facs attribute may be used to indicate one or more image files, as above, or alternatively it may point to one or more appropriate XML elements, such as the <code><surface></code>, <code><zone></code> element, <code><graphic></code>, or <code><binaryObject></code> elements.</p>
Note	<p>When a single page is being cited, use the @from and @to attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the @from attribute may be used without @to; for example a citation such as 'p. 3ff' might be encoded <code><biblScope from="3">p. 3ff</biblScope></code>.</p>
Example	<pre><!-- within ms description --><msItem n="1"> <locus from="1r" target="#F1r #F1v #F2r" to="2r">ff. 1r-2r</locus> <author>Ben Jonson</author> <title>Ode to himself</title> <rubric rend="italics"> An Ode<lb/> to him selfe.</rubric> <incipit>Com leaue the loathed stage</incipit> <explicit>And see his chariot triumph ore his wayne.</explicit> <bibl> <name>Beal</name>, <title>Index 1450-1625</title>, JnB 380</bibl> </msItem> <!-- within transcription ... --> <pb xml:id="F1r"/> <!-- ... --> <pb xml:id="F1v"/> <!-- ... --> <pb xml:id="F2r"/> <!-- ... --></pre>
Example	<p>The @facs attribute is available globally when the <code>transcr</code> module is included in a schema. It may be used to point directly to an image file, as in the following example:</p> <pre><msItem> <locus facets="images/08v.jpg images/09r.jpg images/09v.jpg images/10r.jpg images/10v.jpg">fol. 8v-10v</locus> <title>Birds Praise of Love</title> <bibl> <title>IMEV</title> <biblScope>1506</biblScope> </bibl> </msItem></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.hiLike"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema	

Declaration	<pre>element locus { att.global.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.typed.attributes, attribute scheme { text }?, attribute from { text }?, attribute to { text }?, (text model.gLike model.hiLike)* }</pre>
--------------------	---

2.1.101. <locusGrp>

<**locusGrp**> groups a number of locations which together form a distinct but discontinuous item within a manuscript part, or other object. [10.3.5. References to Locations within a Manuscript]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@global.source (@source)))</p> <p>@scheme identifies the foliation scheme in terms of which all the contained by the group are specified by pointing to some element defining it, or to some other equivalent resol</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype #idata.pointer</p>
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expa item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sib textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence princip sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custl explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem msItemStruct objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stan surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	msdescription: locus
Example	<pre><msItem> <locusGrp> <locus from="13" to="26">Bl. 13--26</locus> <locus from="37" to="58">37--58</locus> <locus from="82" to="96">82--96</locus> </locusGrp></pre>

	<pre><note>Stücke von Daniel Ecklin's Reise ins h. Land</note> </msItem></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <elementRef key="locus" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element locusGrp { att.global.attributes, attribute scheme { text</pre>

2.1.102. <material>

<p><material> contains a word or phrase describing the material of which the object being described is composed. [10.3.2. Material and Object Type]</p>	
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item I label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p>

	<p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	The @ref attribute may be used to point to one or more items within a taxonomy of types of material, defined either internally or externally.
Example	<pre><physDesc> <p> <material>Parchment</material> leaves with a <material>sharkskin</material> binding.</p> </physDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element material { att.global.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.103. <measure>

<measure> contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name. [3.5.3. Numbers and Measures]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.measurement (@unit, @unitRef, @quantity, @commodity)</p> <p>@type specifies the type of measurement in any convenient typology.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype <code>data.enumerated</code></p>
Member of	model.measureLike
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item I label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p>

	<p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<p>This example references a definition of a measurement unit declared in the TEI Header:</p> <pre><measure type="weight"> <num>2</num> pounds of flesh </measure> <measure type="currency">£10-11-6d</measure> <measure type="area" unitRef="#merk">2 <unit>merks</unit> of old extent</measure> <!-- In the TEI Header: --&gt; &lt;encodingDesc&gt; &lt;unitDecl&gt; &lt;unitDef type="area" xml:id="merk"&gt; &lt;label&gt;merk&lt;/label&gt; &lt;placeName ref="#Scotland"/&gt; &lt;desc&gt;A merk was an area of land determined variably by its agricultural productivity.&lt;/desc&gt; &lt;/unitDef&gt; &lt;/unitDecl&gt; &lt;/encodingDesc&gt;</pre> </pre>
Example	<pre><measure commodity="rum" quantity="40" unit="hogshead">2 score hh rum</measure> <measure commodity="roses" quantity="12" unit="count">1 doz. roses</measure> <measure commodity="tulips" quantity="1" unit="count">a yellow tulip</measure></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element measure { att.global.attributes, att.measurement.attributes, attribute type { text }?, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>
---------------------------	---

2.1.104. <msContents>

<**msContents**> (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript, manuscript part, object either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items. [10.6. Intellectual Co

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendit (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@chang)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.msExcerpt (@d) att.msClass (@class)
Contained by	msdescription : msDesc msFrag msPart
May contain	core : p textLang msdescription : msItem msItemStruct summary
Note	Unless it contains a simple prose description, this element should contain at least one of the elements <summary> , <msItem> , or <msItemStruct> . This constraint is not currently enforced by the schema.
Example	<pre><msContents class="#sermons"> <p>A collection of Lollard sermons</p> </msContents></pre>
Example	<pre><msContents> <msItem n="1"> <locus>fol. 5r-7v</locus> <title>An ABC</title> <bibl> <title>IMEV</title> <biblScope>239</biblScope> </bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="2"> <locus>fol. 7v-8v</locus> <title xml:lang="frm">Envoy de Chaucer a Scogan</title> <bibl> <title>IMEV</title> <biblScope>3747</biblScope> </bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="3"> <locus>fol. 8v</locus> <title>Truth</title></pre>

```

<bibl>
  <title>IMEV</title>
  <biblScope>809</biblScope>
</bibl>
</msItem>
<msItem n="4">
  <locus>fol. 8v-10v</locus>
  <title>Birds Praise of Love</title>
<bibl>
  <title>IMEV</title>
  <biblScope>1506</biblScope>
</bibl>
</msItem>
<msItem n="5">
  <locus>fol. 10v-11v</locus>
  <title xml:lang="la">De amico ad amicam</title>
  <title xml:lang="la">Responcio</title>
<bibl>
  <title>IMEV</title>
  <biblScope>16 & 19</biblScope>
</bibl>
</msItem>
<msItem n="6">
  <locus>fol. 14r-126v</locus>
  <title>Troilus and Criseyde</title>
  <note>Bk. 1:71-Bk. 5:1701, with additional losses due to mutilation
throughout</note>
</msItem>
</msContents>

```

Content model

```

<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="textLang" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="titlePage"
        minOccurs="0"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
        minOccurs="0">
        <elementRef key="msItem"/>
        <elementRef key="msItemStruct"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element msContents
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  att.msClass.attributes,
  (
    model.pLike+
    | ( summary?, textLang?, titlePage?, ( msItem | msItemStruct
    )
  }

```

2.1.105. <msDesc>

<p><msDesc> (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript or other text-bearing object. [10.1. Overview]</p>	
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.docStatus (@status)
Member of	model.biblLike
Contained by	<p>core: add cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem sic title unclear</p> <p>figures: figDesc figure</p> <p>header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc taxonomy</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout msItem musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates typeNote</p> <p>textstructure: body div</p> <p>transcr: damage supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: head p</p> <p>msdescription: additional history msContents msFrag msIdentifier msPart physDesc</p>
Example	<pre> <msDesc> <msIdentifier> <settlement>Oxford</settlement> <repository>Bodleian Library</repository> <idno type="Bod">MS Poet. Rawl. D. 169.</idno> </msIdentifier> <msContents> <msItem> <author>Geoffrey Chaucer</author> <title>The Canterbury Tales</title> </msItem> </msContents> <physDesc> <objectDesc> <p>A parchment codex of 136 folios, measuring approx 28 by 19 inches, and containing 24 quires.</p> <p>The pages are margined and ruled throughout.</p> <p>Four hands have been identified in the manuscript: the first 44 folios being written in two cursive anglicana scripts, while the remainder is for the most part in a mixed secretary hand. </p> </objectDesc> </physDesc> </msDesc> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <elementRef key="msIdentifier"/> </pre>

```

<classRef key="model.headLike"
  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
<alternate>
  <classRef key="model.pLike"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="msContents"
      minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="physDesc"
      minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="additional"
      minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element msDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (
    msIdentifier,
    model.headLike*,
    (
      model.pLike+
      |
      msContents?,
      physDesc?,
      history?,
      additional?,
      ( msPart* | msFrag* )
    )
  )
}

```

2.1.106. <msFrag>

<**msFrag**> (manuscript fragment) contains information about a fragment described in relation to a prior cc as a description of a virtual reconstruction of a manuscript or other object whose fragments were catalogued [10.11. Manuscript Fragments]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@style, @rendition)) (att.global.linked (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.reference (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Contained by	msdescription: msDesc
May contain	core: head p msdescription: additional altIdentifier history msContents msIdentifier physDesc
Example	<pre> <msDesc> <msIdentifier> <msName xml:lang="la">Codex Suprasliensis</msName> </msIdentifier> <msFrag> <msIdentifier> <settlement>Ljubljana</settlement> <repository>Narodna in univerzitetna knjiznica</repository> <idno>MS Kopitar 2</idno> </msIdentifier> <msContents> <summary>Contains ff. 10 to 42 only</summary> </msContents> </msFrag> <msFrag> <msIdentifier> <settlement>Warszawa</settlement> <repository>Biblioteka Narodowa</repository> <idno>BO 3.201</idno> </msIdentifier> </msFrag> <msFrag> <msIdentifier> <settlement>Sankt-Peterburg</settlement> <repository>Rossiiskaia natsional'naia biblioteka</repository> <idno>Q.p.I.72</idno> </msIdentifier> </msFrag> </msDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <alternate> <elementRef key="altIdentifier"/> <elementRef key="msIdentifier"/> </alternate> <classRef key="model.headLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <sequence> <elementRef key="msContents" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="physDesc" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="additional" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> </alternate> </sequence> </content></pre>
Schema	

Declaration	<pre> element msFrag { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, ((altIdentifier msIdentifier), model.headLike*, (model.pLike+ (msContents?, physDesc?, history?, additi) } </pre>
--------------------	---

2.1.107. <msIdentifier>

<msIdentifier> (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript or similar object being described. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.biblPart
Contained by	core: bibl msdescription: msDesc msFrag msPart
May contain	header: idno msdescription: altIdentifier collection institution msName repository namesdates: country district geogName placeName region settlement
Example	<pre> <msIdentifier> <settlement>San Marino</settlement> <repository>Huntington Library</repository> <idno>MS.E1.26.C.9</idno> </msIdentifier> </pre>
Schematron	<pre> <s:report test="not(parent::tei:msPart) and (local-name(*[1])='idno' or local-name(*[1])='altIdentifier' or normalize-space(.)='')">An msIdentifier must contain either a repository or location.</s:report> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <sequence> <classRef expand="sequenceOptional" key="model.placeNamePart"/> <elementRef key="institution" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="repository" minOccurs="0"/> </pre>

```

<elementRef key="collection"
  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
<elementRef key="idno"
  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
  minOccurs="0">
  <elementRef key="msName"/>
  <elementRef key="objectName"/>
  <elementRef key="altIdentifier"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element msIdentifier
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      placeName?,
      country?,
      region?,
      settlement?,
      district?,
      geogName?,
      institution?,
      repository?,
      collection*,
      idno*
    ),
    (
      msName | objectName | altIdentifier )*
  )
}

```

2.1.108. <msItem>

<**msItem**> (manuscript item) describes an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.6.1. The **msItem** and **msItemStruct** Elements]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.msExcerpt (@defective) att.msClass (@class)
Member of	model.msItemPart
Contained by	msdescription: msContents msItem
May contain	core: author bibl cit editor gap graphic lb listBibl note p pb quote respStmt textLang title figures: figure header: funder idno principal sponsor msdescription: colophon decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric incipit locus locusGrp msDescription msItem msItemStruct rubric transcr: fw

Example	<pre> <msItem class="#saga"> <locus>ff. 1r-24v</locus> <title>Agrip af Noregs konunga sögum</title> <incipit>regi oc h<ex>ann</ex> setiho <gap extent="7" reason="illegible"/>sc heim se<ex>m</ex> bio</incipit> <explicit>h<ex>on</ex> hev<ex>er</ex> <ex>oc</ex>pa buit hesta .ij. aNan vip fé enh<ex>on</ex>o<ex>m</ex> aNan til reip<ex>ar</ex> </explicit> <textLang mainLang="non">Old Norse/Icelandic</textLang> </msItem> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <elementRef key="locus"/> <elementRef key="locusGrp"/> </alternate> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/> <classRef key="model.msItemPart"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </alternate> </sequence> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element msItem { att.global.attributes, att.msExcerpt.attributes, att.msClass.attributes, ((locus locusGrp)*, (model.pLike+ (model.titlepagePart model.msItemPart model.global)) } </pre>

2.1.109. <msItemStruct>

<**msItemStruct**> (structured manuscript item) contains a structured description for an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.6.1. The [msItem and msItemStruct Elements](#)]

Module msdescription — Schema

Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.msExcerpt (@defective) att.msClass (@class)
Member of	model.msItemPart
Contained by	msdescription: msContents msItem msItemStruct
May contain	core: author bibl listBibl note p respStmt textLang title msdescription: colophon decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric incipit locus locusGrp msItemStruct rubric
Example	<pre> <msItemStruct class="#biblComm" defective="false" n="2"> <locus from="24v" to="97v">24v-97v</locus> <author>Apringius de Beja</author> <title type="uniform" xml:lang="la">Tractatus in Apocalypsin</title> <rubric>Incipit Trac<supplied reason="omitted">ta</supplied>tus in apoka<lb/>lipsin eruditissimi uiri <lb/> Apringi ep<ex>iscop</ex>i Pacensis eccl<ex>esi</ex>e</rubric> <finalRubric>EXPLIC<ex>IT</ex> EXPO<lb/>SITIO APOCALIPSIS QVA<ex>M</ex> EXPOSVIT DOM<lb/>NVS APRINGIUS EP<ex>ISCOPU</ex>S. DEO GR<ex>ACI</ex>AS AGO. FI<lb/>NITO LABORE ISTO.</finalRubric> <bibl> <ref target="http://amiBibl.xml#Apringius1900">Apringius</ref>, ed. Férotin</bibl> <textLang mainLang="la">Latin</textLang> </msItemStruct> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <sequence> <alternate minOccurs="0"> <elementRef key="locus"/> <elementRef key="locusGrp"/> </alternate> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <sequence> <elementRef key="author" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="respStmt" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="title" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="rubric" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="incipit" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="msItemStruct" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="explicit" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="finalRubric" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="colophon" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="decoNote" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> </alternate> </sequence> </content> </pre>

```

<elementRef key="listBibl"
  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
  minOccurs="0">
  <elementRef key="bibl"/>
  <elementRef key="biblStruct"/>
</alternate>
<elementRef key="filiation"
  minOccurs="0"/>
<classRef key="model.noteLike"
  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
<elementRef key="textLang"
  minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element msItemStruct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  att.msClass.attributes,
  (
    ( locus | locusGrp )?,
    (
      model.pLike+
      | (
          author*,
          respStmt*,
          title*,
          rubric?,
          incipit?,
          msItemStruct*,
          explicit?,
          finalRubric?,
          colophon*,
          decoNote*,
          listBibl*,
          ( bibl | biblStruct )*/,
          filiation?,
          model.noteLike*,
          textLang?
        )
      )
    )
}

```

2.1.110. <msName>

<**msName**> (alternative name) contains any form of unstructured alternative name used for a manuscript or other object, such as an 'ocellus nominum', or nickname. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs</code>

	(@fac)) (@att.global.change (@change)) (@att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (@att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Contained by	msdescription: msIdentifier
May contain	core: name character data
Example	<msName>The Vercelli Book</msName>
Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <elementRef key="rs"/> <elementRef key="name"/> </alternate> </content> </pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre> element msName { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, (text model.gLike rs name)* } </pre>

2.1.111. <msPart>

<msPart> (manuscript part) contains information about an originally distinct manuscript or part of a manuscript which is now part of a composite manuscript. [10.10. Manuscript Parts]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rend (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change, @resp)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Contained by	msdescription: msDesc msPart
May contain	core: head p msdescription: additional history msContents msIdentifier msPart physDesc
Note	As this last example shows, for compatibility reasons the identifier of a manuscript part must be supplied as a simple <altIdentifier> rather than using the more structured <msIdentifier>. This usage is however deprecated.
Example	

```

<msPart>
  <msIdentifier>
    <idno>A</idno>
    <altIdentifier type="catalog">
      <collection>Becker</collection>
      <idno>48, Nr. 145</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
    <altIdentifier type="catalog">
      <collection>Wiener Liste</collection>
      <idno>4°5</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
  </msIdentifier>
  <head>
    <title xml:lang="la">Gregorius: Homiliae in Ezechielem</title>
    <origPlace key="tgn_7008085">Weissenburg (?)</origPlace>
    <origDate notAfter="0815"
      notBefore="0801">IX. Jh., Anfang</origDate>
  </head>
</msPart>

```

Example

```

<msDesc>
  <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Amiens</settlement>
    <repository>Bibliothèque Municipale</repository>
    <idno>MS 3</idno>
    <msName>Maurdramnus Bible</msName>
  </msIdentifier>
  <msContents>
    <summary xml:lang="lat">Miscellany of various texts; Prudentius,
    Psychomachia; Physiologus de natura animantium</summary>
    <textLang mainLang="lat">Latin</textLang>
  </msContents>
  <physDesc>
    <objectDesc form="composite_manuscript"/>
  </physDesc>
  <msPart>
    <msIdentifier>
      <idno>ms. 10066-77 ff. 140r-156v</idno>
    </msIdentifier>
    <msContents>
      <summary xml:lang="lat">Physiologus</summary>
      <textLang mainLang="lat">Latin</textLang>
    </msContents>
  </msPart>
  <msPart>
    <msIdentifier>
      <altIdentifier>
        <idno>MS 6</idno>
      </altIdentifier>
    </msIdentifier>
  </msPart>
  <!-- other information specific to this part here -->
  </msPart>
  <!-- more parts here -->
</msDesc>

```

Content model

```

<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="msIdentifier"/>
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <alternate>
      <classRef key="model.pLike"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
      <sequence>
        <elementRef key="msContents">
```

```

        minOccurs="0"/>
<elementRef key="physDesc"
    minOccurs="0"/>
<elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/>
<elementRef key="additional"
    minOccurs="0"/>
<elementRef key="msPart"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```

element msPart
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    (
        msIdentifier,
        model.headLike*,
        (
            model.pLike+
            | ( msContents?, physDesc?, history?, additional?, msPart
        )
    )
}
```

2.1.112. <musicNotation>

<musicNotation> contains description of type of musical notation. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.physDescPart
Contained by	msdescription: physDesc
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic h label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data

Example	<pre><musicNotation> <p>Square notation of 4-line red staves.</p> </musicNotation></pre>
Example	<pre><musicNotation>Neumes in <term>campo aperto</term> of the St. Gall type. </musicNotation></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element musicNotation { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.113. <name>

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.5.1. Referring Strings]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.reference (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@ref, @nymRef)) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.when (@notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @evidenceType) (att.typed (@type, @subtype))</p> <p>@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any classification scheme or typology.</p> <p>Derived from</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data type data.enumerated</p> <p>Suggested values The name is of a person</p> <p>includePlace The name is of a place</p> <p>org The name is of an organisation</p> <p>unknown The type of name is unknown</p> <p>other The name is of another type (you may provide a custom value)</p>

Member of	model.nameLike.agent
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc edito expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher reg resp respStmt sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence princip scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition cust decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msName musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signature stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb meas note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName pers placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with < placeName >, or < orgName >, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.
Example	<pre><name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name> <name type="place">Villingaholt</name> <name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name> <name ref="#HOC001" type="person">Occleve</name></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element name { att.global.attributes, att.personal.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype,</pre>

```

attribute type { "person" | "place" | "org" | "unknown" | "other"
macro.phraseSeq
}

```

2.1.114. <note>

<note> contains a note or annotation. [3.8.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.11.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global</code> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<code>att.global.rendition</code> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<code>att.global.linking</code> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<code>att.global.facs</code> (@facs)) (<code>att.global.change</code> (@change)) (<code>att.global.responsibility</code> (@cert, @resp)) (<code>att.global.source</code> (@source)) <code>att.placement</code> (@place) <code>att.pointing</code> (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) <code>att.typed</code> (@type, @subtype) <code>att.written</code> (@hand)</p> <p>@anchored indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.truthValue</p> <p>Defattr</p> <p>Note In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. 'page 218, lines 3–4'). The <code>@anchored</code> attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the <code>@n</code> attribute.</p> <p>@targetEnd points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p> <p>Note This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the <code>range</code> function of XPointer, as further described in 16.2.4.6. <code>range()</code>.</p>
Member of	model.noteLike
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item I label lg list measure name note num orig

	<p>p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt series sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figure</p> <p>header: authority change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions adminInfo altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>textstructure: body div text</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied surface surfaceGrp zone</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<p>In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px;"> <pre> And yet it is not only in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the painterly <note place="bottom" resp="#MDMH" type="gloss"> <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object, the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively. </note> style of the Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this psychological significance. <!-- elsewhere in the document --> <respStmt xml:id="MDMH"> <resp>translation from German to English</resp> <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name> </respStmt></pre> </div> <p>For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.</p>
Example	The global @n attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark

the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

```
Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the
family during the second half of the eleventh century,
<note anchored="true" n="126"> The
alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is,
in fact, a reference to
Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known
from Geniza documents
published by Jacob Mann.
```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element note { att.global.attributes, att.placement.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.written.attributes, attribute anchored { text }?, attribute targetEnd { list { + } }?, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.115. <num>

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.5.3. Numbers and Measures]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@faccs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.reference (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>) <code>att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)</code></p> <p>@type indicates the type of numeric value.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data type <code>enumerated</code></p> <p>Suggested values absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5</p> <p>Includes <code>ordinal</code> ordinal number, e.g. 21st</p> <p>fraction fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters</p> <p>percentage a percentage</p>

	<p>Note If a different typology is desired, other values for this attribute.</p> <p>@value supplies the value of the number in standard form.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data type data.numeric</p> <p>Values a numeric value.</p> <p>Note The standard form used is defined by the TEI data.numeric.</p>
Member of	model.measureLike
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email e head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence princip sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition cust decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNota objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stam support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persNam region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb meas num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName pers placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Note	Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use structure mechanism described in chapter 18. Feature Structures . The <num> element is i use in simple applications.
Example	<pre><p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday</p> <p>Light travels at <num value="3E10">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi></num> cm per second.</p></pre>
Content model	<pre><content></pre>

```
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element num
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.ranging.attributes,
    attribute type { "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" }?,
    attribute value { text }?,
    macro.phraseSeq
}
```

2.1.116. <objectDesc>

<objectDesc> contains a description of the physical components making up the object which is being described.

[[10.7.1. Object Description](#)]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rend (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@chan)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))</p> <p>@form The original physical form of the carrier Status Recommended Datatype data.enumerated</p> <p>Suggested values multiple include: Multiple gatherings of leaves, held with binding of some kind, and used by turning the leaves</p> <p>roll a parchment membrane, or two or more such membranes, either sewn together edge-to-edge to form a continuous surface for writing, or laid together in a pile and sewn together at the head, and used in unrolling the membranes</p> <p>sheet a single sheet of parchment or paper, intended to form part of a codex, either kept flat or folded (rather than rolled) for storage</p> <p>faltbuch a codex whose leaves are opened by unfolding rather than turning; an 'almost flat book'</p> <p>other Some other unspecified format</p> <p>unknown The format of the object is not known</p>
Member of	model.physDescPart
Contained by	msdescription: physDesc

May contain	<p>core: p</p> <p>msdescription: layoutDesc supportDesc</p>
Example	<pre><objectDesc form="codex"> <supportDesc material="mixed"> <p>Early modern <material>parchment</material> and <material>paper</material>. </p> </supportDesc> <layoutDesc> <layout ruledLines="25 32"/> </layoutDesc> </objectDesc></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="//tei:sourceDesc/tei:msDesc[not(tei:msPart)]" see="https://bodleian.github.io/consolidated-tei- schema/msdesc.html#objectdescBook"> <sch:assert role="warn" test="tei:physDesc/tei:objectDesc[@form]"> The physical form of the carrier should be recorded in the objectDesc element, with a form attribute. </sch:assert> </sch:rule> <sch:rule context="//tei:sourceDesc/tei:msDesc/tei:msPart"> <sch:assert role="warn" test=" tei:physDesc/tei:objectDesc[@form] or ancestor::tei:msDesc/tei:physDesc/tei:objectDesc[@form] "> The physical form of the carrier should be recorded in the objectDesc element, with a form attribute, unless it has been described for the entire manuscript. </sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"> <elementRef key="supportDesc" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="layoutDesc" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element objectDesc { att.global.attributes, attribute form { "codex" "roll" "sheet" "faltbuch" "other" "unkn" }?, (model.pLike+ (supportDesc?, layoutDesc?)) }</pre>

2.1.117. <objectType>

<objectType> contains a word or phrase describing the type of object being referred to. [10.3.2. Material and Object Type]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	The @ref attribute may be used to point to one or more items within a taxonomy of types of object, defined either internally or externally.
Example	<pre> <physDesc> <p> Paper and vellum <objectType>codex</objectType> in modern cloth binding.</p> </physDesc> </pre>
Example	

	<pre><physDesc> <p>Fragment of a re-used marble <objectType>funerary stele</objectType>. </p> </physDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element objectType { att.global.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.118. <orgName>

<orgName> (organization name) contains an organizational name. [13.2.2. Organizational Names]	
Module	namesdates — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.ren @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.att.notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.ed (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)))) att.typed (@type, @subty
Member of	model.nameLike.agent
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc ed num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt sic street term textLang derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence print linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition cu incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb me unclear figures: figure formula header: idno

	<p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp mater watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName p</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<p>About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in</p> <pre><placeName key="PEN">Pennsyla.</placeName> Abolition Society </orgName> [...]</pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="//tei:msDesc//tei:orgName[ancestor::tei:fileDesc[de <sch:assert test="@key[matches(., 'org_\d+')]">In the medieval catalogue, the orgName element, when a descendant of msDesc, must have a key matching the pattern 'org_\d+'.</sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element orgName { att.global.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.personal.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.119. <orig>

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization 12. Critical Apparatus]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>)
Member of	<code>model.choicePart</code> <code>model.pPart.transcriptional</code>

Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<p>If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; background-color: #f9f9f9;"> <pre><l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l> <l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig> </l></pre> </div>
Example	<p>More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; background-color: #f9f9f9;"> <pre><l>But this will be a <choice> <orig>meere</orig> <reg>mere</reg> </choice> confusion</l> <l>And hardly shall we all be <choice> <orig>vnderstoode</orig> <reg>understood</reg> </choice> </l></pre> </div>
Content model	<div style="border: 2px solid black; padding: 10px; background-color: white;"> <pre><content> <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/> </content></pre> </div>

Schema Declaration	<pre>element orig { att.global.attributes, macro paraContent }</pre>
---------------------------	--

2.1.120. <origDate>

<origDate> (origin date) contains any form of date, used to identify the date of origin for a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.3.1. Origination]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: abbr add address choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	

	<pre><origDate notAfter="-0200" notBefore="-0300">3rd century BCE</origDate></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="//tei:origDate"> <sch:assert role="error" test="@calendar and (@when or @notBefore or @notAfter or @from or @to) and string-length(normalize-space(string())) gt 0"> The origDate element must have two or more attributes - calendar and at least one of when, notBefore, notAfter, from and/or to - and must contain some text describing the date. </sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element origDate { att.global.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.typed.attributes, (text model.gLike model.phrase model.global)* }</pre>

2.1.121. <origPlace>

<origPlace> (origin place) contains any form of place name, used to identify the place of origin for a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.3.1. Origination]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Note	The @type attribute may be used to distinguish different kinds of 'origin', for example original place of publication, as opposed to original place of printing.
Example	<pre><origPlace>Birmingham</origPlace></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element origPlace { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.122. <origin>

<origin> contains any descriptive or other information concerning the origin of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.8. History]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Contained by	msdescription: history
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><origin evidence="internal" notAfter="1845" notBefore="1802" resp="#AMH">Copied in <name type="origPlace">Derby</name>, probably from an old Flemish original, between 1802 and 1845, according to <persName xml:id="AMH">Anne-Mette Hansen</persName>. </origin></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element origin { att.global.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.datable.attributes,</pre>

```

    }
  macro.specialPara
}

```

2.1.123. <p>

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.pLike
Contained by	core: item note q quote figures: figure header: availability change editionStmt encodingDesc handNote licence projectDesc publicationStmt scriptNote sourceDesc msdescription: accMat acquisition additions binding bindingDesc collation condition custEvent custodialHist decoDesc decoNote filiation foliation handDesc history layout layoutDesc msContents msDesc msFrag msItem msItemStruct msPart musicNotation objectDesc origin physDesc provenance recordHist scriptDesc seal sealDesc signatures source summary support supportDesc surrogates typeDesc typeNote textstructure: body div
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<pre> <p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>What have you done?</q> </p> <p> <q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time, </q> replied Thjostolf. </p> <p> <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said. </p> <p> <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some </pre>

```
plan for me.</q>  
</p>
```

Schematron

```
<s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and  
(ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab)  
and not(parent::tei:exemplum | parent::tei:item | parent::tei:note  
| parent::tei:q  
| parent::tei:quote | parent::tei:remarks | parent::tei:said  
| parent::tei:sp  
| parent::tei:stage | parent::tei:cell | parent::tei:figure )">  
Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other  
paragraphs or ab elements.  
</s:report>
```

Schematron

```
<s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:p[. =  
current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain  
higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab.  
</s:report>
```

Content model

```
<content>  
  <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/>  
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element p  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.declaring.attributes,  
  att.fragmentable.attributes,  
  att.written.attributes,  
  macro paraContent  
}
```

2.1.124. <pb>

<pb> (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>) <code>att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code> <code>att.edition (@ed, @edRef)</code> <code>att.spanning (@spanTo)</code> <code>att.breaking (@break)</code>
Member of	<code>model.milestoneLike</code>

Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp series sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figure</p> <p>header: authority change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>textstructure: body div text</p> <p>transcr: damage fw subst supplied surface surfaceGrp zone</p>
May contain	Empty element
Note	<p>A <pb> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global @n attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself.</p> <p>The @type attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect. The more specialized attributes @break, @ed, or @edRef should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.</p>
Example	<p>Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.</p> <pre><p> ... <pb ed="ed2" n="145"/> <!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb ed="ed1" n="283"/> <!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </p></pre>
Example	<p>A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the @facs attribute</p> <pre><body> <pb facs="page1.png" n="1"/> <!-- page1.png contains an image of the page; the text it contains is encoded here --> <p> <!-- ... --> </p> <pb facs="page2.png" n="2"/> <!-- similarly, for page 2 --> <p> <!-- ... --> </p> </body></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <empty/></pre>

	<pre></content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element pb { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.edition.attributes, att.spanning.attributes, att.breaking.attributes, empty }</pre>

2.1.125. <persName>

<p><persName> (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, poss honorifics, added names, etc. [13.2.1. Personal Names]</p>	
Module	namesdates — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.ren @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.da (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.d custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@e@nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.nameLike.agent
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc ec num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt sic street term textLang derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence prin linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition cu incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenan surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb me figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp mater watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data

Example	<pre><persName> <forename>Edward</forename> <forename>George</forename> <surname type="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</surname>, <roleName>Baron Lytton <placeName>Knebworth</placeName> </roleName> </persName></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="//tei:msDesc//tei:persName[ancestor::tei:fileDesc[d <sch:assert test="@key[matches(.., 'person_\d+')]">In the medieval catalogue, the persName element, when a descendant of msDesc, must have a key matching the pattern 'person_\d+'.</sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element persName { att.global.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.personal.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.126. <physDesc>

<physDesc> (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the **model.physDescPart** class. [10.7. Physical Description]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	msdescription: msDesc msFrag msPart
May contain	core: p

msdescription: accMat additions bindingDesc decoDesc handDesc musicNotation
objectDesc scriptDesc sealDesc typeDesc

Example

```
<physDesc>
  <objectDesc form="codex">
    <supportDesc material="perg">
      <support>Parchment.</support>
      <extent>i + 55 leaves
      <dimensions scope="all" type="leaf">
        <unit>inch</unit>
        <height>7½</height>
        <width>5¾</width>
      </dimensions>
    </extent>
    </supportDesc>
    <layoutDesc>
      <layout columns="2">In double columns.</layout>
    </layoutDesc>
  </objectDesc>
  <handDesc>
    <p>Written in more than one hand.</p>
  </handDesc>
  <decoDesc>
    <p>With a few coloured capitals.</p>
  </decoDesc>
</physDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <classRef expand="sequenceOptional"
      key="model.physDescPart"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element physDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    model.pLike?,
    objectDesc?,
    handDesc?,
    typeDesc?,
    scriptDesc?,
    musicNotation?,
    decoDesc?,
    additions?,
    bindingDesc?,
    sealDesc?,
    accMat?
  )
}
```

2.1.127. <placeName>

<placeName> contains an absolute or relative place name. [13.2.3. Place Names]

Module	namesdates — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @n iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBef @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copy (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.sour @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.placeNamePart
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc ec num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unc derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence prin linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origF summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persN transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb me figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp mater watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persN transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<pre><placeName> <settlement>Rochester</settlement> <region>New York</region> </placeName></pre>
Example	<pre><placeName> <geogName>Arrochar Alps</geogName> <region>Argylshire</region> </placeName></pre>
Example	<pre><placeName> <measure>10 miles</measure> <offset>Northeast of</offset></pre>

	<pre><settlement>Attica</settlement> </placeName></pre>
--	---

Schematron

	<pre><sch:rule context="//tei:msDesc//tei:placeName[ancestor::tei:fileDesc[<sch:assert test="@key[matches(., 'place_\d+')]">In the medieval catalogue, the placeName element, when a descendant of msDesc, must have a key matching the pattern 'place_\d+'.</sch:assert></sch:rule></pre>
--	---

Content model

	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
--	---

Schema Declaration

	<pre>element placeName { att.datable.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.global.attributes, att.personal.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>
--	---

2.1.128. <postCode>

<p><postCode> (postal code) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail. [3.5.2. Addresses]</p>	
---	--

<postCode> (postal code) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail. [3.5.2. Addresses]	
Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>)
Member of	model.addrPart
Contained by	core: address
May contain	Character data only
Note	The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.
Example	<pre><postCode>HR1 3LR</postCode></pre>

Example	<postCode>60142-7</postCode>
Content model	<content> <textNode/> </content>
Schema Declaration	element postCode { att.global.attributes, text }

2.1.129. <principal>

<principal> (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of	model.respLike
Contained by	core: bibl header: editionStmt titleStmt msdescription: msItem
May contain	core: abbr address choice date email expan foreign gap hi lb measure name note num pb ref term title figures: figure header: idno msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am ex fw subst character data
Example	<principal ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/105517912">Gary Taylor</principal>
Content model	<content>

```
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element principal
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.canonical.attributes,
    macro.phraseSeq.limited
}
```

2.1.130. <profileDesc>

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change, @cancel)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.teiHeaderPart
Contained by	header: teiHeader
May contain	header: textClass
Note	Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences of any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts.

Example

```
<profileDesc>
    <langUsage>
        <language ident="fr">French</language>
    </langUsage>
    <textDesc n="novel">
        <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
        <constitution type="single"/>
        <derivation type="original"/>
        <domain type="art"/>
        <factuality type="fiction"/>
        <interaction type="none"/>
        <preparedness type="prepared"/>
        <purpose degree="high" type="entertain"/>
        <purpose degree="medium" type="inform"/>
    </textDesc>
    <settingDesc>
        <setting>
            <name>Paris, France</name>
            <time>Late 19th century</time>
        </setting>
    </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model	<pre><content> <classRef key="model.profileDescPart" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, model.profileDescPar</pre>

2.1.131. <projectDesc>

<projectDesc> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [2.3.1. The Project Description 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declirable Elements]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.fac (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)
Member of	model.encodingDescPart
Contained by	header: encodingDesc
May contain	core: p
Example	<pre><projectDesc> <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990</p> </projectDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element projectDesc { att.global.attributes, att.declarable.attributes, model.pLike+ }</pre>

2.1.132. <provenance>

<p><provenance> contains any descriptive or other information concerning a single identifiable episode during the history of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object after its creation but before its acquisition. [10.8. History]</p>	
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Contained by	msdescription: history
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<pre><provenance>Listed as the property of Lawrence Sterne in 1788. </provenance> <provenance>Sold at Sothebys in 1899.</provenance></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element provenance { att.global.attributes, att.datable.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.133. <pubPlace>

<p><pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]</p>	
Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))
Member of	model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail
Contained by	core: bibl header: publicationStmt
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<pre><publicationStmt> <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher> <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace> <date>1989</date> </publicationStmt></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element pubPlace { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.134. <publicationStmt>

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	header: fileDesc
May contain	core: address date p pubPlace publisher ref header: authority availability distributor idno
Note	Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmt model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and order.
Example	<pre><publicationStmt> <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher> <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace> <date when="1846"/> </publicationStmt></pre>
Example	<pre><publicationStmt> <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher> <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace> <availability> <p>Available under licence only</p> </availability> <date when="1992">1992</date> </publicationStmt></pre>
Example	<pre><publicationStmt> <publisher>Zea Books</publisher> <pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace> <date>2017</date> <availability> <p>This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution International license.</p> </availability> <ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/> </publicationStmt></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/></pre>

```

<classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
<classRef key="model.pLike"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element publicationStmt
{
    att.global.attributes,
    (
        ( model.publicationStmtPart.agency, model.publicationStmtP
        | model.pLike+
    )
}

```

2.1.135. <publisher>

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of	model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency
Contained by	core: bibl header: publicationStmt
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Note	Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page
Example	<pre> <imprint> <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace> </pre>

	<pre><publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher> <date>1987</date> </imprint></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element publisher { att.global.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.136. <q>

<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [3.3.3. Quotation]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@fac)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>) <code>att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom)</code> (<code>att.ascribed (@who)</code>)</p> <p>@type may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype <code>data.enumerated</code></p> <p>Suggested values representation of speech</p> <p>includes <code>thought</code> representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue</p> <p>written quotation from a written source</p> <p>soCalled authorial distance</p> <p>foreign</p> <p>distinct linguistically distinct</p> <p>term technical term</p> <p>emph rhetorically emphasized</p> <p>mentioned referring to itself, not its normal referent</p>

Member of	model.qLike
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit citedRange corr del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc figure</p> <p>header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>textstructure: body div</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <code><q></code> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <code><hi></code> with a value of @rend that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.
Example	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px;"> <p>It is spelled <code><q>Tübingen</q></code> – to enter the letter <code><q>u</q></code> with an umlaut hold down the <code><q>option</q></code> key and press <code><q>0 0 f c</q></code></p> </div>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element q {</pre>

```

    att.global.attributes,
    att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
    attribute type
    {
        "spoken"
        "thought"
        "written"
        "soCalled"
        "foreign"
        "distinct"
        "term"
        "emph"
        "mentioned"
    }?,
    macro.specialPara
}

```

2.1.137. <quote>

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.fac (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.quoteLike
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit citedRange corr del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc figure header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname textstructure: body div transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp

	<p>watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.
Example	<div style="background-color: #e0f2e0; padding: 10px;"> <p>Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it keeps</quote> <ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref></p> </div>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element quote { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.msExcerpt.attributes, att.notated.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.138. <recordHist>

<recordHist> (recorded history) provides information about the source and revision status of the parent manuscript or object description itself. [10.9.1. Administrative Information]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	msdescription: adminInfo
May contain	core: p header: change msdescription: source
Example	<div style="background-color: #e0f2e0; padding: 10px;"> <pre><recordHist> <source></pre> </div>

```

<p>Derived from <ref target="#IMEV">IMEV 123</ref> with
additional research
by P.M.W.Robinson</p>
</source>
<change when="1999-06-23">
  <name>LDB</name> (editor)
  checked examples against DTD version 3.6
</change>
</recordHist>

```

Content model

```

<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="source"/>
      <elementRef key="change"
        maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element recordHist
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( source, change* ) )
}

```

2.1.139. <ref>

<**ref**> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.cReferencing (@cRef)
Member of	model.ptrLike
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp series sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal publicationStmt scriptNote sponsor linking: seg

	<p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	The @target and @cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.
Example	<p>See especially</p> <pre><ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second sentence</ref></pre>
Example	<p>See also <code><ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term> </ref>.</code></p>
Schematron	<pre><s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes '@target' and '@cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element ref { att.global.attributes, att.pointing.attributes,</pre>

```

    att.internetMedia.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    att.declaring.attributes,
    att.cReferencing.attributes,
    macro paraContent
}

```

2.1.140. <reg>

<**reg**> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.
[\[3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization 12. Critical Apparatus\]](#)

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage fw supplied
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, < reg > may be used alone:

	<pre><q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg> </q></pre>
Example	<p>It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <code><choice></code> and <code><orig></code> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:</p> <pre><q>Please <choice> <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg> <orig>cnk</orig> </choice> if an <choice> <reg>answer</reg> <orig>nsr</orig> </choice> is <choice> <reg>required</reg> <orig>reqd</orig> </choice> </q></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element reg { att.global.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro paraContent }</pre>

2.1.141. `<region>`

<p><code><region></code> contains the name of an administrative unit such as a state, province, or county, larger than a settlement, but smaller than a country. [13.2.3. Place Names]</p>	
Module	namesdates — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition))</code> (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select))</code> (<code>att.global.facs (@facis))</code> (<code>att.global.change (@change))</code> (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))</code> (<code>att.global.source (@source))</code> <code>att.naming (@role, @nymRef)</code> (<code>att.canonical (@key, @ref))</code> <code>att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code> <code>att.datable (@calendar, @period)</code> (<code>att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))</code> (<code>att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))</code> (<code>att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))</code>
Member of	<code>model.placeNamePart</code>
Contained	core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc

by	<p>editor email expan foreign head hi item I label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><placeName> <region n="IL" type="state">Illinois</region> </placeName></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element region { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.datable.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.142. <relatedItem>

<relatedItem> contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [3.11.2.7].

Related Items

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global</code> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<code>att.global.rendition</code> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<code>att.global.linking</code> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<code>att.global.facs</code> (@facs)) (<code>att.global.change</code> (@change)) (<code>att.global.responsibility</code> (@cert, @resp)) (<code>att.global.source</code> (@source)) <code>att.typed</code> (@type, @subtype)</p> <p>@target points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative URI reference</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data type <code>data.pointer</code></p>
Member of	<code>model.biblPart</code>
Contained by	<code>core: bibl</code>
May contain	<code>core: bibl</code> <code>listBibl</code> <code>ref</code> <code>msdescription: msDesc</code>
Note	If the <code>@target</code> attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element must be empty.
Example	<pre> <biblStruct> <monogr> <author>Shirley, James</author> <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title> <imprint> <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace> <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher> <date>1953</date> </imprint> <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent> </monogr> <series> <title>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642-1700</title> </series> <relatedItem type="otherForm"> <biblStruct> <monogr> <author>Shirley, James</author> <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title> <title type="sub">a tragico-comedie presented at the private house in Salisbury Court by Her Majesties servants</title> <imprint> <pubPlace>London</pubPlace> <publisher>H. Moseley</publisher> <date>1655</date> </imprint> <extent>78 p.</extent> </monogr> </biblStruct> </relatedItem> </biblStruct></pre>
Schematron	<pre> <sch:report test="@target and count(child::*) > 0">If the</pre>

	<pre>@target attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be empty</sch:report> <sch:assert test="@target or child::*">A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item</sch:assert></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate minOccurs="0"> <classRef key="model.biblLike"/> <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element relatedItem { att.global.attributes, att.type.attributes, attribute target { text }?, (model.biblLike model.ptrLike)? }</pre>

2.1.143. <repository>

<**repository**> contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts or other objects are stored, possibly forming part of an institution. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition))</code> (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select))</code> (<code>att.global.facs (@facis))</code> (<code>att.global.change (@change))</code> (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))</code> (<code>att.global.source (@source))</code> <code>att.naming (@role, @nymRef)</code> (<code>att.canonical (@key, @ref))</code>
Contained by	msdescription: <code>altIdentifier msIdentifier</code>
May contain	Character data only
Example	<pre><msIdentifier> <settlement>Oxford</settlement> <institution>University of Oxford</institution> <repository>Bodleian Library</repository> <idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno> </msIdentifier></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></pre>

	</content>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element repository { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, macro.xtext }</pre>

2.1.144. <resp>

<**resp**> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1.1 Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
Contained by	core: respStmt
May contain	<p>core: abbr address choice date email expand foreign gap hi lb measure name note num pb r term title</p> <p>figures: figure</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName pers placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am ex fw subst</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	The attribute @ref, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html for bibliographic usage.
Example	<pre><respStmt> <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</resp> <name>Edward Child</name> </respStmt></pre>
Content model	<content>

	<pre><macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content></pre>
--	---

Schema Declaration

	<pre>element resp { att.global.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, att.datable.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }</pre>
--	--

2.1.145. <respStmt>

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of bibliographic work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.3. Series Statement]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref))
Member of	model.respLike
Contained by	core: bibl series header: editionStmt titleStmt msdescription: msItem msItemStruct
May contain	core: name note resp namesdates: orgName persName
Example	<pre><respStmt> <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp> <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName> </respStmt></pre>
Example	<pre><respStmt> <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp> <name>Alan Morrison</name> </respStmt></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <sequence> <alternate></pre>

```

<sequence>
  <elementRef key="resp"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
  <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
</sequence>
<sequence>
  <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
  <elementRef key="resp"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<elementRef key="note"
  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element respStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  (
    ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) | ( model.nameLike.agent
      note*
    )
  )
}

```

2.1.146. <revisionDesc>

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.docStatus (@status)
Contained by	header: teiHeader
May contain	core: list header: change
Note	If present on this element, the @status attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally <change> elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.
Example	<pre> <revisionDesc status="embargoed"> <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change> </revisionDesc> </pre>

Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <elementRef key="list"/> <elementRef key="listChange"/> <elementRef key="change" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element revisionDesc { att.global.attributes, att.docStatus.attributes, (list listChange change+) }</pre>

2.1.147. <rubric>

<rubric> contains the text of any *rubric* or heading attached to a particular manuscript item, that is, a string of words through which a manuscript or other object signals the beginning of a text division, often with an assertion as to its author and title, which is in some way set off from the text itself, typically in red ink, or by use of different size or type of script, or some other such visual device.

[10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective)
Member of	model.msQuoteLike
Contained by	msdescription: msItem msItemStruct
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<pre><rubric>Nu koma Skyckiu Rym<ex>ur</ex>. </rubric> <rubric>Incipit liber de conscientia humana a beatissimo Bernardo</pre>

	<pre>editus.</rubric> <rubric> <locus>16. f. 28v in margin: </locus>Dicta Cassiodori </rubric></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element rubric { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.msExcerpt.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.148. <scriptDesc>

<p><scriptDesc> contains a description of the scripts used in a manuscript or other object. [10.7.2.1. Writing]</p>	
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.physDescPart
Contained by	msdescription: physDesc
May contain	core: p header: scriptNote msdescription: summary
Example	<pre><scriptDesc> <p/> </scriptDesc></pre>
Example	<pre><scriptDesc> <summary>Contains two distinct styles of scripts </summary> <scriptNote xml:id="style-1">.</scriptNote> <scriptNote xml:id="style-2">.</scriptNote> </scriptDesc></pre>

Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <sequence> <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="scriptNote" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </sequence> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element scriptDesc { att.global.attributes, (model.pLike+ (summary?, scriptNote+)) }</pre>

2.1.149. <scriptNote>

<scriptNote> describes a particular script distinguished within the description of a manuscript or similar resource. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)
Contained by	msdescription: scriptDesc
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<pre><scriptNote scope="sole"/></pre>

Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element scriptNote { att.global.attributes, att.handFeatures.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.150. <seal>

<seal> contains a description of one seal or similar applied to the object described [10.7.3.2. Seals]	
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))</p> <p>@contemporary specifies whether or not the seal is contemporary with the item to which it is affixed Status optional Data type xTrueValue</p>
Contained by	msdescription: sealDesc
May contain	core: p msdescription: decoNote
Example	<pre><seal n="2" subtype="cauda_duplex" type="pendant"> <p>The seal of <name>Jens Olufsen</name> in black wax. (<ref>DAS 1061</ref>). Legend: <q>S IOHANNES OLAVI</q>. Parchment tag on which is written: <q>Woldorp Iohanne G</q>.</p> </seal></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.pLike"/> <elementRef key="decoNote"/> </alternate></pre>

	</content>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element seal { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.datable.attributes, attribute contemporary { text }?, (model.pLike decoNote)+ }</pre>

2.1.151. <sealDesc>

<sealDesc> (seal description) describes the seals or similar items related to the object described, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of <seal> elements. [10.7.3.2. Seals]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.physDescPart
Contained by	msdescription: physDesc
May contain	core: p msdescription: condition decoNote seal summary
Example	<pre><sealDesc> <seal contemporary="true" type="pendant"> <p>Green wax vertical oval seal attached at base.</p> </seal> </sealDesc></pre>
Example	<pre><sealDesc> <p>Parchment strip for seal in place; seal missing.</p> </sealDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <sequence> <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"> <elementRef key="decoNote"/> <elementRef key="seal"/></pre>

```

<elementRef key="condition"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element sealDesc
{
    att.global.attributes,
    ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, ( decoNote | seal | condition )+
}

```

2.1.152. <secFol>

<secFol> (second folio) marks the word or words taken from a fixed point in a codex (typically the beginning of the second leaf) in order to provide a unique identifier for it. [10.3.7. Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expans foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expans foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

	<p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><secFol>(con-)versio morum</secFol></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:msDesc or ancestor::tei:egXML">The <sch:name/> element should not be used outside of msDesc.</sch:assert></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element secFol { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.153. **<seg>**

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the ‘chunk’ level. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 6.2. Components of the Verse Line 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module	linking — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) att.notated (@notation)
Member of	model.choicePart model.linePart model.segLike
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item I label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p>

	<p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied zone</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element.
Example	<pre><seg>When are you leaving?</seg> <seg>Tomorrow.</seg></pre>
Example	<pre><s> <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg> glory was the ballfield. </s></pre>
Example	<pre><seg type="preamble"> <seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king in Frankish country.</seg> <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg> <seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </seg> </seg></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element seg { att.global.attributes, att.segLike.attributes,</pre>

```

        att.typed.attributes,
        att.written.attributes,
        att.notated.attributes,
        macro paraContent
    }
}

```

2.1.154. <series>

<series> (series information) contains information about the series in which a book or other bibliographic item has appeared. [3.11.2.1. Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.biblPart
Contained by	core: bibl
May contain	<p>core: biblScope editor gap lb note pb ref respStmt textLang title</p> <p>figures: figure</p> <p>header: availability idno</p> <p>transcr: fw</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre> <series xml:lang="de"> <title level="s">Halbgraue Reihe zur Historischen Fachinformatik</title> <respStmt> <resp>Herausgegeben von</resp> <name type="person">Manfred Thaller</name> <name type="org">Max-Planck-Institut für Geschichte</name> </respStmt> <title level="s">Serie A: Historische Quellenkunden</title> <biblScope>Band 11</biblScope> </series> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <elementRef key="title"/> <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/> <elementRef key="editor"/> <elementRef key="respStmt"/> <elementRef key="biblScope"/> <elementRef key="idno"/> <elementRef key="textLang"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> <elementRef key="availability"/> </alternate> </pre>

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element series
{
    att.global.attributes,
    (
        text
        model.gLike
        title
        model.ptrLike
        editor
        respStmt
        biblScope
        idno
        textLang
        model.global
        availability
    )*
}
```

2.1.155. <settlement>

<settlement> contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-

Module	namesdates — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.ren @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canon (@calendar, @period)) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notA @datingMethod))
Member of	model.placeNamePart
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc ec num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unc derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence prin linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origF summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persN transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb me figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg

	<p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp mater watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName per</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><placeName> <settlement type="town">Glasgow</settlement> <region>Scotland</region> </placeName></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="//tei:origin//tei:settlement[ancestor::tei:fileDesc] <sch:assert test="@key[matches(., 'place_\d+')]>In the medieval catalogue, the settlement element, when a descendant of origin, must have a key matching the pattern 'place_\d+'.</sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element settlement { att.global.attributes, att.naming.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.datable.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.156. <sic>

<**sic**> (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.
[\[3.4.1. Apparent Errors\]](#)

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> <code>(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))</code>
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item I label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi I label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px;"> <p>for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.</p> </div>
Example	<p>If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px;"> <p>I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now – how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?</p> </div>
Example	<p>It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px;"> <p>I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now – how <choice> <sic>we can</sic> <corr>can we</corr> </choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?</p> </div>
Example	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px;"> <p>for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and <choice> <sic>a Table</sic></p> </div>

	<pre><corr>a' babbl&lt;/corr> </choice> of green fields.</pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element sic { att.global.attributes, macro paraContent }</pre>

2.1.157. <signatures>

<signatures> contains discussion of the leaf or quire signatures found within a codex or similar object. [10.3.7. Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

	<p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><signatures>Quire and leaf signatures in letters, [b]-v, and roman numerals; those in quires 10 (1) and 17 (s) in red ink and different from others; every third quire also signed with red crayon in arabic numerals in the center lower margin of the first leaf recto: "2" for quire 4 (f. 19), "3" for quire 7 (f. 43); "4," barely visible, for quire 10 (f. 65), "5," in a later hand, for quire 13 (f. 89), "6," in a later hand, for quire 16 (f. 113).</signatures></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:msDesc or ancestor::tei:egXML">The <sch:name/> element should not be used outside of msDesc.</sch:assert></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element signatures { att.typed.attributes, att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.158. <source>

<p><source> describes the original source for the information contained with a manuscript or object description. [10.9.1.1. Record History]</p>	
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	msdescription: recordHist

May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><source>Derived from <ref>Stanley (1960)</ref> </source></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element source { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.159. <sourceDesc>

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)
Contained by	header: fileDesc
May contain	<p>core: bibl list listBibl p</p> <p>msdescription: msDesc</p>
Example	<pre><sourceDesc> <bibl> <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.</pre>

	<pre><publisher>OUP</publisher> <date>1968</date>. </bibl> </sourceDesc></pre>
--	--

Example

	<pre><sourceDesc> <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p> </sourceDesc></pre>
--	---

Content model

	<pre><content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.biblLike"/> <classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/> <classRef key="model.listLike"/> </alternate> </alternate> </content></pre>
--	--

Schema Declaration

	<pre>element sourceDesc { att.global.attributes, att.declarable.attributes, (model.pLike+ (model.biblLike model.sourceDescPart model.listLike)+) }</pre>
--	--

2.1.160. <sponsor>

<sponsor> specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]	
--	--

<sponsor> specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]	
Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>) <code>att.canonical (@key, @ref)</code>
Member of	<code>model.respLike</code>
Contained by	core: <code>bibl</code> header: <code>editionStmt titleStmt</code> msdescription: <code>msItem</code>
May contain	core: <code>abbr address choice date email expan foreign gap hi lb measure name note num pb ref term title</code>

	<p>figures: figure</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am ex fw subst</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from <i>funders</i> (see element <funder>), who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.
Example	<pre><sponsor>Association for Computers and the Humanities</sponsor> <sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor> <sponsor ref="http://www.allc.org/">Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</sponsor></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element sponsor { att.global.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }</pre>

2.1.161. <stamp>

<p><stamp> contains a word or phrase describing a stamp or similar device. [10.3.3. Watermarks and Stamps]</p>	
Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@fac)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>) <code>att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code> <code>att.datable (@calendar, @period)</code> (<code>att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)</code>) (<code>att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)</code>) (<code>att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)</code>)
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item i label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear

	<p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<pre><rubric>Apologyticu TTVLLIANI AC IGNORATIA IN XPO IHV<lb/> SI NON LICET<lb/> NOBIS RO<lb/> manii imperii <stamp>Bodleian stamp</stamp> <lb/> </rubric></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element stamp { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.datable.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.162. <street>

<street> contains a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as

the name of the street or route on which it is located. [3.5.2. Addresses]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.addrPart
Contained by	core: address
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Note	The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned.
Example	<pre><street>via della Faggiola, 36</street></pre>
Example	<pre><street> <name>Duntaggin</name>, 110 Southmoor Road </street></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element street { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.163. <subst>

<subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text. [11.3.1.5. Substitutions]

Module	transcr — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)) (att.written (@hand)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
Member of	model.pPart.editorial
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: add del lb pb</p> <p>transcr: fw</p>
Example	<pre>... are all included. <del hand="#RG">It is <subst> <add>T</add> t </subst>he expressed</pre>
Example	<pre>that he and his Sister Mifs D - <lb/>who always lived with him, wd. be <subst> very <lb/> <add>principally</add> </subst> remembered in her Will.</pre>
Example	<pre><ab>τ<subst> <add place="above">ών</add> α </subst> συνκυρόντι<subst> <add place="above">ων</add> α </subst> έργαστηρι<subst></pre>

	<pre> <add place="above">ων</add> α </subst> </ab> </pre>
--	--

Example

	<pre> <subst> <gap quantity="5" reason="illegible" unit="character"/> <add>apple</add> </subst> </pre>
--	---

Schematron

	<pre> <s:assert test="child::tei:add and child::tei:del"> <s:name/> must have at least one child add and at least one child del</s:assert> </pre>
--	---

Content model

	<pre> <content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"> <elementRef key="add"/> <elementRef key="del"/> <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/> </alternate> </content> </pre>
--	--

Schema Declaration

	<pre> element subst { att.global.attributes, att.transcriptional.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, (add del model.milestoneLike)+ } </pre>
--	---

2.1.164. <summary>

<p><summary> contains an overview of the available information concerning some aspect of an item or object (for example, its intellectual content, history, layout, typography etc.) as a complement or alternative to the more detailed information carried by more specific elements. [10.6. Intellectual Content]</p>	
--	--

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global</code> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<code>att.global.rendition</code> (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (<code>att.global.linking</code> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (<code>att.global.fac</code> (@fac)) (<code>att.global.change</code> (@change)) (<code>att.global.responsibility</code> (@cert, @resp)) (<code>att.global.source</code> (@source))

Contained by	msdescription: decoDesc handDesc history layoutDesc msContents scriptDesc sealDesc typeDesc
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<pre><summary>This item consists of three books with a prologue and an epilogue. </summary></pre>
Example	<pre><typeDesc> <summary>Uses a mixture of Roman and Black Letter types.</summary> <typeNote>Antiqua typeface, showing influence of Jenson's Venetian fonts.</typeNote> <typeNote>The black letter face is a variant of Schwabacher. </typeNote> </typeDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element summary { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.165. <supplied>

<**supplied**> signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]

Module	transcr — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

	<p>(att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))</p> <p>@reason one or more words indicating why the text has had to be supplied, e.g. <i>overbinding</i>, <i>faded-ink</i>, <i>lost-folio</i>, <i>omitted-in-original</i>.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace</p>
Member of	model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Note	The <damage> , <gap> , , <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.
Example	<pre>I am dr Sr yr <supplied reason="illegible" source="#amanuensis_copy">very humble Servt</supplied> Sydney Smith</pre>
Example	<pre><supplied reason="omitted-in-original">Dedication</supplied> to the duke of Bejar</pre>

Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element supplied { att.global.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, attribute reason { list { + } }?, macro paraContent }</pre>

2.1.166. <support>

<support> contains a description of the materials etc. which make up the physical support for the written part of a manuscript or other object. [10.7.1. Object Description]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	msdescription: supportDesc
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<pre><objectDesc form="roll"> <supportDesc> <support> Parchment roll with <material>silk</material> ribbons. </support> </supportDesc> </objectDesc></pre>

Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element support { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.167. <supportDesc>

<**supportDesc**> (support description) groups elements describing the physical support for the written part object. [10.7.1. Object Description]

Module	msdescription — Schema																						
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @source))</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 20%; vertical-align: top; padding-right: 10px;">@material</td><td>The material composing the majority of the support.</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>Status Recommended</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>Datatype data.word</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>Suggested values</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>includechart The object is composed of parchment.</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>The object is composed of any kind of support, details, if any, in a child <support> element.</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>papyrus The object is composed of papyrus.</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>The object is composed of palm leaves.</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>mixed The object is composed of a combination of different materials, such as parchment. The nature of the components is specified in the <support> element.</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>other The object is composed of another material.</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td>unknown The material of which is unknown.</td></tr> </table>	@material	The material composing the majority of the support.		Status Recommended		Datatype data.word		Suggested values		includechart The object is composed of parchment.		The object is composed of any kind of support, details, if any, in a child < support > element.		papyrus The object is composed of papyrus.		The object is composed of palm leaves.		mixed The object is composed of a combination of different materials, such as parchment. The nature of the components is specified in the < support > element.		other The object is composed of another material.		unknown The material of which is unknown.
@material	The material composing the majority of the support.																						
	Status Recommended																						
	Datatype data.word																						
	Suggested values																						
	includechart The object is composed of parchment.																						
	The object is composed of any kind of support, details, if any, in a child < support > element.																						
	papyrus The object is composed of papyrus.																						
	The object is composed of palm leaves.																						
	mixed The object is composed of a combination of different materials, such as parchment. The nature of the components is specified in the < support > element.																						
	other The object is composed of another material.																						
	unknown The material of which is unknown.																						
Contained by	msdescription: objectDesc																						
May contain	core: p header: extent msdescription: collation condition foliation support																						
Example	<pre><supportDesc> <support> Parchment roll with <material>silk</material> ribbons.</pre>																						

	<pre></support> </supportDesc></pre>
--	--

Schematron

```
<sch:rule context="//tei:sourceDesc/tei:msDesc[not(tei:msPart)]"
  see="https://bodleian.github.io/consolidated-tei-schema/msdesc.html#s
<sch:assert role="warn"
  test="tei:physDesc/tei:objectDesc/tei:supportDesc[@material]"> The ma
  paper, etc.) of a manuscript should be recorded
  in the supportDesc element, with a material attribute.
</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>
<sch:rule context="//tei:sourceDesc/tei:msDesc/tei:msPart">
<sch:assert role="warn"
  test=" tei:physDesc/tei:objectDesc/tei:supportDesc[@material] or
  ancestor::tei:msDesc/tei:physDesc/tei:objectDesc/tei:supportDesc[@mate
"> The material (parchment, paper, etc.) of each part should be record
  the supportDesc element, with a material attribute, unless it has been
  described for the entire manuscript.
</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>
```

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>
  <sequence maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="support" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="foliation"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="collation"
      minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="condition"
      minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element supportDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute material
  {
    "perg" | "chart" | "papyrus" | "palm" | "mixed" | "other"
  }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( support?, extent?, foliation*, collation?
}
```

2.1.168. <surface>

<surface> defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing them. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

Module	transcr — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.coordinated (@@ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry, @points) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)</p> <p>@attachment describes the method by which this surface is or was connected to the main surface Status Optional Datatype p:metadata.enumerated</p> <p>Sample values glued in place include pinned pinned or stapled in place sewn sewn in place</p> <p>@flipping indicates whether the surface is attached and folded in such a way as to provide two writing surfaces Status Optional Datatype p:metadata.truthValue</p>
Contained by	transcr: facsimile surface surfaceGrp zone
May contain	<p>core: desc gap graphic label lb note pb</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>transcr: fw surface surfaceGrp zone</p>
Note	<p>The <surface> element represents any two-dimensional space on some physical surface forming part of the source material, such as a piece of paper, a face of a monument, a billboard, a leaf etc.</p> <p>The coordinate space defined by this element may be thought of as a grid @lrx - @ulx units wide and @uly - @lry units high.</p> <p>The <surface> element may contain graphic representations or transcriptions of written zones, both. The coordinate values used by every <zone> element contained by this element are understood with reference to the same grid.</p> <p>Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> element.</p>
Example	<pre><facsimile> <surface lrx="200" lry="300" ulx="0" uly="0"> <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/> </surface> </facsimile></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <sequence> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <classRef key="model.global"/> <classRef key="model.labelLike"/> <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/></pre>

```

</alternate>
<sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"
  minOccurs="0">
  <alternate>
    <elementRef key="zone"/>
    <elementRef key="line"/>
    <elementRef key="path"/>
    <elementRef key="surface"/>
    <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element surface
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.coordinated.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute attachment { text }?,
  attribute flipping { text }?,
  (
    ( model.global | model.labelLike | model.graphicLike )*/,
    ( ( zone | line | path | surface | surfaceGrp ), model.glob
  )
}

```

2.1.169. <surfaceGrp>

<surfaceGrp> defines any kind of useful grouping of written surfaces, for example the recto and verso of a single leaf, which the encoder wishes to treat as a single unit. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module	transcr — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Contained by	transcr: facsimile surface surfaceGrp
May contain	core: gap lb note pb figures: figure transcr: fw surface surfaceGrp
Note	Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple < surface > elements may be indicated using the < surfaceGrp > elements.
Example	<pre> <sourceDoc> <surfaceGrp> <surface lrx="200" lry="300" ulx="0" uly="0"> </pre>

```

<graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
</surface>
<surface lrx="200" lry="300" ulx="0"
uly="0">
<graphic url="Bovelles-49v.png"/>
</surface>
</surfaceGrp>
</sourceDoc>

```

Content model

```

<content>
<alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
minOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<elementRef key="surface"/>
<elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element surfaceGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.global | surface | surfaceGrp )+
}

```

2.1.170. <surname>

<surname> contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name.
[\[13.2.1. Personal Names\]](#)

Module	namesdates — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef)) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Member of	model.persNamePart
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item I label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric

	<p>secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><surname type="combine">St John Stevas</surname></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element surname { att.global.attributes, att.personal.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.171. <surrogates>

<surrogates> contains information about any representations of the manuscript or other object being described which may exist in the holding institution or elsewhere. [10.9. Additional Information]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	msdescription: additional
May contain	core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title

	<p>unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp mater msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data</p>
Example	<pre><surrogates> <bibl> <title type="gmd">diapositive</title> <idno>AM 74 a, fol.</idno> <date>May 1984</date> </bibl> <bibl> <title type="gmd">b/w prints</title> <idno>AM 75 a, fol.</idno> <date>1972</date> </bibl> </surrogates></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="//tei:surrogates/tei:bibl"> <sch:report role="warn" test="contains(@type, 'fascimile') > The type attribute of "<sch:value of select="@type"/>" contains a typo (fascimile should be facsimile).</sch:report> </sch:rule></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element surrogates { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.172. <taxonomy>

<taxonomy> defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structure [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global</code> (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (<code>att.global.rendition</code> , @style, @rendition)) (<code>att.global.link</code> (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next,

	<p><code>@exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.re (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))</code></p>
Contained by	<code>header: classDecl taxonomy</code>
May contain	<code>core: bibl desc listBibl</code> <code>header: category taxonomy</code> <code>msdescription: msDesc</code>
Note	Nested taxonomies are common in many fields, so the <code><taxonomy></code> element can be nested inside other taxonomy elements.
Example	<pre> <taxonomy xml:id="tax.b"> <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl> <category xml:id="tax.b.a"> <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc> <category xml:id="tax.b.a1"> <catDesc>Daily</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.a2"> <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.a3"> <catDesc>National</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.a4"> <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.a5"> <catDesc>Political</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.a6"> <catDesc>Sports</catDesc> </category> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.d"> <catDesc>Religion</catDesc> <category xml:id="tax.b.d1"> <catDesc>Books</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="tax.b.d2"> <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc> </category> </category> </taxonomy> </pre>
Example	<pre> <taxonomy> <category xml:id="literature"> <catDesc>Literature</catDesc> <category xml:id="poetry"> <catDesc>Poetry</catDesc> <category xml:id="sonnet"> <catDesc>Sonnet</catDesc> <category xml:id="shakesSonnet"> <catDesc>Shakespearean Sonnet</catDesc> </category> <category xml:id="petraSonnet"> <catDesc>Petrarchan Sonnet</catDesc> </category> </category> <category xml:id="haiku"> <catDesc>Haiku</catDesc> </category> </category> <category xml:id="drama"> </pre>

```

<catDesc>Drama</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="meter">
  <catDesc>Metrical Categories</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="feet">
    <catDesc>Metrical Feet</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="iambic">
      <catDesc>Iambic</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="trochaic">
      <catDesc>trochaic</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="feetNumber">
    <catDesc>Number of feet</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="pentameter">
      <catDesc>Pentameter</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tetrameter">
      <catDesc>Tetrameter</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
</category>
</taxonomies>

<lg ana="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter">
  <l>Shall I compare thee to a summer's day</l>
  <!-- ... -->
</lg>

```

Content model

```

<content>
  <alternate>
    <alternate>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
                minOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="category"/>
        <elementRef key="taxonomies"/>
      </alternate>
      <sequence>
        <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
                  minOccurs="1">
          <classRef key="model.glossLike"/>
          <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
        </alternate>
        <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
                  minOccurs="0">
          <elementRef key="category"/>
          <elementRef key="taxonomies"/>
        </alternate>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <sequence>
      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
      <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
                minOccurs="0">
        <elementRef key="category"/>
        <elementRef key="taxonomies"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

Schema

Declaration	<pre> element taxonomy { att.global.attributes, (((category taxonomy)+ ((model.glossLike model.descLike)+, (category ta) (model.biblLike, (category taxonomy)*)) } </pre>
--------------------	---

2.1.173. <teiHeader>

<**teiHeader**> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource of resources. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendit (@rend, @style, @rendition)</code>) (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @prev, @exclude, @select)</code>) (<code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code>) (<code>att.global.change (@change)</code>) (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</code>) (<code>att.global.source (@source)</code>)
Contained by	<code>textstructure: TEI</code>
May contain	<code>derived-module-msdesc: include</code> <code>header: encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc</code>
Note	One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.
Example	<pre> <teiHeader> <fileDesc> <titleStmt> <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title> <author>Shakespeare, William (1564-1616)</author> <respStmt> <resp>Originally prepared by</resp> <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name> </respStmt> <respStmt> <resp>Revised and edited by</resp> <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name> </respStmt> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt> <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor> <address> <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine> </address> <idno type="OTA">119</idno> <availability> <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p> </availability> <date when="1968">1968</date> </publicationStmt> <sourceDesc> <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl> </sourceDesc> </fileDesc> <encodingDesc> </pre>

```

<projectDesc>
    <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling
       concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised
       for use during the
          editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
</projectDesc>
<editorialDecl>
    <correction>
        <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
    </correction>
    <normalization>
        <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s
           ligatured
              forms are not encoded.</p>
    </normalization>
</editorialDecl>
<refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
    <cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(\.*)">
        replacementPattern="#xpath{//div1[@n='$1']/div2[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3']}"
        <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse
           order as that
              listed here: <list>
                <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
            </item>
                <item>a period</item>
                <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
            </item>
                <item>a space</item>
                <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
            </item>
            </list>
        </p>
    </cRefPattern>
</refsDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<revisionDesc>
    <list>
        <item>
            <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
        <item>
            <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
        </list>
    </revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>

```

Content model

```

<content>
    <sequence>
        <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
        <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"
                  maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
        <elementRef key="revisionDesc"
                  minOccurs="0"/>
    </sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element teiHeader
{
    att.global.attributes,
    ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}

```

2.1.174. <term>

<p><term> contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.3.4. Terms, Glosses, Equivalents, and Descriptions]</p>	
Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.cReferencing (@cRef)
Member of	model.emphLike
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>figures: figDesc</p> <p>header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote keywords licence principal scriptNote sponsor</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: damage fw supplied</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	<p>When this element appears within an <index> element, it is understood to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be associated with a <gloss> element by means of its @ref attribute; alternatively a <gloss> element may point to a <term> element by means of its @target attribute.</p> <p>In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.</p>

	<p>As with other members of the att.canonical class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the @ref attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the @key attribute). Because the mutually exclusive @target and @cRef attributes overlap with the function of the @ref attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.</p>
Example	<p>A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a <term>parser</term>, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.</p>
Example	<p>We may define <term rend="sc" xml:id="TDPV1">discoursal point of view</term> as <gloss target="#TDPV1">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss></p>
Example	<p>We may define <term ref="#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as <gloss xml:id="TDPV2">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss></p>
Example	<p>We discuss Leech's concept of <term ref="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> below.</p>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element term { att.global.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, att.sortable.attributes, att.cReferencing.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.175. <text>

<p><text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]</p>	
Module	textstructure — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)
Member of	model.resourceLike
Contained by	textstructure: TEI
May contain	core: gap lb note pb figures: figure textstructure: body transcr: fw
Note	This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.
Example	<pre><text> <front> <docTitle> <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart> </docTitle> </front> <body> <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l> <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l> </body> </text></pre>
Example	The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:
Content model	<pre><text> <front> <!-- front matter for the whole group --> </front> <group> <text> <!-- first text --> </text> <text> <!-- second text --> </text> </group> </text></pre>

```

<sequence>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0">
    <elementRef key="front"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
  <alternate>
    <elementRef key="body"/>
    <elementRef key="group"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0">
    <elementRef key="back"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element text
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( front, model.global* )?,
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( back, model.global* )?
  )
}

```

2.1.176. <textClass>

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default)
Member of	model.profileDescPart
Contained by	header: profileDesc
May contain	header: keywords
Example	<taxonomy>

```

<category xml:id="acprose">
  <catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc>
</category>
<!-- other categories here --&gt;
&lt;/taxonomy&gt;
&lt;!-- ... --&gt;
&lt;textClass&gt;
  &lt;catRef target="#acprose"/&gt;
  &lt;classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org"&gt;001.9&lt;/classCode&gt;
  &lt;keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov"&gt;
    &lt;list&gt;
      &lt;item&gt;End of the world&lt;/item&gt;
      &lt;item&gt;History - philosophy&lt;/item&gt;
    &lt;/list&gt;
  &lt;/keywords&gt;
&lt;/textClass&gt;
</pre>

```

Content model

```

<content>
  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"
    minOccurs="0">
    <elementRef key="classCode"/>
    <elementRef key="catRef"/>
    <elementRef key="keywords"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

```

Schema Declaration

```

element textClass
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( classCode | catRef | keywords )*
}

```

2.1.177. <textLang>

<textLang> (text language) describes the languages and writing systems identified within the bibliographic work being described, rather than its description. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.6.6. Languages and Writing Systems]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</code> (<code>att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition))</code> (<code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select))</code> (<code>att.global.facs (@facs))</code> (<code>att.global.change (@change))</code> (<code>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))</code> (<code>att.global.source (@source))</code></p> <p>@mainLang (main language) supplies a code which identifies the chief language used in the bibliographic work. Status: optional Data type: <code>data.language</code></p> <p>@otherLangs (other languages) one or more codes identifying any other languages used in the bibliographic work.</p>

	<p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data type occurrences of teidata.language separated by whitespace</p>
Member of	model.biblPart model.msItemPart
Contained by	<p>core: bibl series</p> <p>msdescription: msContents msItem msItemStruct</p>
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	<p>This element should not be used to document the languages or writing systems used for the bibliographic or manuscript description itself: as for all other TEI elements, such information should be provided by means of the global @xml:lang attribute attached to the element containing the description.</p> <p>In all cases, languages should be identified by means of a standardized 'language tag' generated according to BCP 47. Additional documentation for the language may be provided by a <language> element in the TEI Header.</p>
Example	<pre><textLang mainLang="en" otherLangs="la"> Predominantly in English with Latin glosses</textLang></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="//tei:msItem"> <sch:assert role="warn" test=" tei:textLang or ancestor::tei:msContents/tei:textLang or ancestor::tei:msItem/tei:textLang or (tei:msItem and (every \$i in tei:msItem satisfies \$i/descendant-or-self::tei:textLang)) "> The language of each item should be recorded in a textLang element, unless it has been described for the entire manuscript or part. Use 'und' for undetermined or 'zxx' if there is no linguistic content. </sch:assert> </sch:rule> <sch:rule context="//tei:textLang"> <sch:assert role="error" test="@mainLang and string-length(normalize-space(string())) gt 0"> The predominant language must be recorded in using a code in a mainLang attribute (and an otherLang attribute if there are other languages) and described as text within the textLang element. </sch:assert> </sch:rule> <sch:rule context="//tei:textLang/@mainLang </pre>

```
//tei:textLang/@otherLangs | //@xml:lang">
<sch:assert role="error"
  test="every $code in tokenize(., ' ') satisfies matches($code,
'^[a-z]{2,3}(-|$)')" Codes in <sch:value-of select="name(.)"/>
attributes must conform to BCP 47
(https://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47), starting with an ISO
639 code for the language, then optionally further codes for
the script (ISO 15924), region, transliteration, etc.
</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element textLang
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute mainLang { text }?,
  attribute otherLangs { list { * } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

2.1.178. <title>

<title> contains a title for any kind of work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @att.global.facs (@faccs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)</code></p> <p>@type classifies the title according to some convenient type Derived from Status Optional Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Suggested values The title is the main title includesub The title is a subtitle or title of a part</p> <p>alt The title is an alternate title, translative</p> <p>short The title is an abbreviated form of the</p> <p>desc</p>

	transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic h measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName pers region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	The attributes @key and @ref, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external file; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.
Example	<pre><title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK, 18-21 July 1989</title></pre>
Example	<pre><title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition</title></pre>
Example	<pre><title type="full"> <title type="main">Synthèse</title> <title type="sub">an international journal for epistemology, methodology and history of science</title> </title></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element title { att.global.attributes, att.canonical.attributes, att.typed.attribute.subtype, att.datable.attributes, attribute type { "main" "sub" "alt" "short" "desc" "list" "list-item" }, attribute level { "a" "m" "j" "s" "u" }?, macro paraContent }</pre>

2.1.179. <titleStmt>

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module	header — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.replace (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Contained by	header: fileDesc
May contain	core: author editor respStmt title header: funder principal sponsor
Example	<pre><titleStmt> <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</title> <respStmt> <resp>compiled by</resp> <name>P. J. Lucas</name> </respStmt> </titleStmt></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <sequence> <elementRef key="title" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <classRef key="model.respLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, (title+, model.respLi</pre>

2.1.180. <typeDesc>

<typeDesc> contains a description of the typefaces or other aspects of the printing of an incunable or other printed source. [10.7.2.1. Writing]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac))

	(@fac)) (@att.global.change (@change)) (@att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (@att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.physDescPart
Contained by	msdescription: physDesc
May contain	core: p msdescription: summary typeNote
Example	<pre><typeDesc> <p>Uses an unidentified black letter font, probably from the 15th century</p> </typeDesc></pre>
Example	<pre><typeDesc> <summary>Contains a mixture of blackletter and Roman (antiqua) typefaces</summary> <typeNote xml:id="Frak1">Blackletter face, showing similarities to those produced in Wuerzburg after 1470. </typeNote> <typeNote xml:id="Rom1">Roman face of Venetian origins.</typeNote> </typeDesc></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <classRef key="model.pLike" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> <sequence> <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="typeNote" maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </sequence> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element typeDesc { att.global.attributes, (model.pLike+ (summary?, typeNote+)) }</pre>

2.1.181. <typeNote>

<typeNote> describes a particular font or other significant typographic feature distinguished within the description of a printed resource. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)

	(att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)
Contained by	msdescription: typeDesc
May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Example	<pre><typeNote scope="sole"> Printed in an Antiqua typeface showing strong Italianate influence. </typeNote></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element typeNote { att.global.attributes, att.handFeatures.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>

2.1.182. <unclear>

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module	core — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@fac)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

	<p>(att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))</p> <p>@reason</p> <p>indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace</p> <p>Suggested values audibile includable</p> <p>background_noise eccentric_ductus</p>
	<pre><div> <head>Rx</head> <p>500 mg <unclear reason="illegible">placebo</unclear> </p> </div></pre> <p>Note One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause.</p>
	<p>@agent</p> <p>Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Sampled values damage results from rubbing of</p> <p>include: the leaf edges mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface smoke damage results from smoke</p>
Member of	model.choicePart model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by	<p>core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg sic street term textLang title unclear</p> <p>derived-module-msdesc: countermark</p> <p>header: change distributor edition extent handNote licence scriptNote</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage fw supplied zone</p>

May contain	<p>core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>header: idno</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width</p> <p>namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname</p> <p>transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	<p>The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility.</p> <p>The <code><damage></code>, <code><gap></code>, <code></code>, <code><unclear></code> and <code><supplied></code> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.</p> <p>The <code>@hand</code> attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section 11.3.2.1. Document Hands.</p>
Example	<pre><u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said ... </u></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro paraContent"/> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element unclear { att.global.attributes, att.editLike.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, attribute reason { list { ("illegible" "inaudible" "faded" "background_noise" "eccentric_ductus")+ } }?, attribute agent { text }?, macro paraContent }</pre>

2.1.183. <watermark>

<watermark> contains a word or phrase describing a watermark or similar device. [10.3.3. Watermarks and Stamps]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of	model.pPart.msdesc
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email expans foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp sic street term textLang title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence principal scriptNote sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	core: abbr add address choice cit corr date del email expans foreign gap graphic hi lb measure name note num orig pb q quote ref reg sic term title unclear figures: figure formula header: idno linking: seg msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width namesdates: addName country district forename geo geogFeat geogName orgName persName placeName region settlement surname transcr: am damage ex fw subst supplied character data
Example	<pre> <support> <p> <material>Rag paper</material> with <watermark>anchor</watermark> watermark</p> </support> </pre>
Content model	<pre> <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </pre>

	<pre></content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element watermark { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>

2.1.184. <width>

<width> contains a measurement of an object along the axis parallel to its bottom, e.g. perpendicular to tl codex. [10.3.4. Dimensions]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Attributes	Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @att.global.source (@source)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @size, @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)))
Member of	model.dimLike model.measureLike
Contained by	core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc editor email emailI item I label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp size title unclear derived-module-msdesc: countermark figures: figDesc header: authority catDesc change distributor edition extent funder handNote licence princip sponsor linking: seg msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition cust dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicN origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary typeNote watermark namesdates: addName country district forename geogFeat geogName orgName persNam settlement surname transcr: damage fw supplied
May contain	Character data only
Note	If used to specify the depth of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a mo conventionally refers to the axis facing the observer, and perpendicular to that indicated by
Example	<pre><width unit="in">4</width></pre>
Content model	<pre><content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/> </content></pre>

Schema Declaration

```
element width { att.global.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes,
```

2.1.185. <zone>

<zone> defines any two-dimensional area within a <surface> element. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. En Transcription]

Module	transcr — Schema
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendit @style, @rendition) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.re (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)</p> <p>@rotate indicates the amount by which this zone has been rotated clockwise, with respect to the normal orientation of the <surface> element as implied by the dimensions given in the <msDesc> element or by the coordinates of the <surface> element. The orientation is expressed in arc degrees.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data type metadata.count</p> <p>Default 0</p>
Member of	model.linePart
Contained by	transcr: surface zone
May contain	<p>core: add choice del gap graphic hi lb note pb unclear</p> <p>figures: figure formula</p> <p>linking: seg</p> <p>transcr: damage fw surface zone</p> <p>character data</p>
Note	<p>The position of every zone for a given surface is always defined by reference to the coordinate system defined for that surface.</p> <p>A graphic element contained by a zone represents the whole of the zone.</p> <p>A zone may be of any shape. The attribute @points may be used to define a polygonal zone in a coordinate system defined by its parent surface.</p> <p>A zone is always a closed polygon. Repeating the initial coordinate at the end of the sequence is optional. To encode an unclosed path, use the <path> element.</p>
Example	<pre><surface lrx="0" lry="0" ulx="14.54" uly="16.14"> <graphic url="stone.jpg"/> <zone points="4.6,6.3 5.25,5.85 6.2,6.6 8.19222,7.4125 9.89222,6.5875 10.9422,6.1375 11.4422,6.7125 8.21722,8.3125 6.2,7.65"/> </surface></pre> <p>This example defines a non-rectangular zone: see the illustration in section [[undefined PH 11.2.2. En Transcription]] for more information.</p>

Example	<pre><facsimile> <surface lrx="400" lry="280" ulx="50" uly="20"> <zone lrx="500" lry="321" ulx="0" uly="0"> <graphic url="graphic.png" /> </zone> </surface> </facsimile></pre>
	<p>This example defines a zone which has been defined as larger than its parent surface in order to encompass the dimensions of the graphic it contains.</p>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> <elementRef key="surface"/> <classRef key="model.linePart"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Schema Declaration	<pre>element zone { att.global.attributes, att.coordinated.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.written.attributes, attribute rotate { text }?, (text model.graphicLike model.global surface model.li }</pre>

2.2. Model classes

2.2.1. model.addrPart

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.5.2. Addresses]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	address
Members	model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName]] model.offsetLike[geogFeat] model.persNamePart[addName forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country district geogName placeName region settlement]] idno] addrLine postCode street

2.2.2. model.addressLike

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.pPart.data
Members	address email

2.2.3. model.availabilityPart

model.availabilityPart groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	availability
Members	licence

2.2.4. model.biblLike

model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	cit listBibl model.inter model.msItemPart relatedItem sourceDesc taxonomy
Members	bibl listBibl msDesc

2.2.5. model.biblPart

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	bibl
Members	model.imprintPart[biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher] model.respLike[author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor] availability bibl citedRange edition extent msIdentifier relatedItem series textLang

2.2.6. model.choicePart

model.choicePart groups elements (other than `<choice>` itself) which can be used within a `<choice>` alternation. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	choice
Members	abbr am corr ex expan orig reg seg sic supplied unclear

2.2.7. model.common

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	body div figure

Members	model.divPart[model.ILike[]] model.pLike[p] lg model.inter[model.biblLike[bibl listBibl msDesc] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list]] model.oddDecl model.qLike[model.quoteLike[cit quote] q] model.stageLike] include
Note	This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

2.2.8. model.dateLike

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times]	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.pPart.data
Members	date

2.2.9. model.descLike

model.descLike groups elements which contain a description of their function.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	category gap graphic taxonomy
Members	desc

2.2.10. model.dimLike

model.dimLike groups elements which describe a measurement forming part of the physical dimensions of some object.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	dimensions
Members	depth height width

2.2.11. model.divBottom

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	body div figure lg list
Members	model.divBottomPart model.divWrapper

2.2.12. model.divLike

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	body div
Members	div

2.2.13. model.divPart

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	macro.specialPara model.common
Members	model.lLike[l] model.pLike[p] lg
Note	Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

2.2.14. model.divTop

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	body div lg list
Members	model.divTopPart[model.headLike[head]] model.divWrapper

2.2.15. model.divTopPart

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.divTop
Members	model.headLike[head]

2.2.16. model.emphLike

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase
Members	foreign term title

2.2.17. model.encodingDescPart

model.encodingDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	encodingDesc
Members	classDecl projectDesc

2.2.18. model.global

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	address bibl body cit date div figure head l lg list macro paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara msItem origDate series surface surfaceGrp text zone
Members	model.global.edit[gap] model.global.meta model.milestoneLike[fw lb pb] model.noteLike[note] figure

2.2.19. model.global.edit

model.global.edit groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.global
Members	gap

2.2.20. model.graphicLike

model.graphicLike groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	facsimile figure formula model.phrase surface zone
Members	formula graphic

2.2.21. model.headLike

model.headLike groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	figure listBibl model.divTopPart msDesc msFrag msPart
Members	head

2.2.22. model.hiLike

model.hiLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	formula locus model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase model.linePart
Members	hi

2.2.23. model.highlighted

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	bibl model.phrase
Members	model.emphLike[foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi]

2.2.24. model.imprintPart

model.imprintPart groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.biblPart
Members	biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher

2.2.25. model.inter

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	head I macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common
Members	model.biblLike[bibl listBibl msDesc] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list] model.oddDecl model.qLike[model.quoteLike[cit quote] q] model.stageLike

2.2.26. model.ILike

model.ILike groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	head lg macro.paraContent model.divPart
Members	I

2.2.27. model.labelLike

model.labelLike groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	lg model.inter surface
Members	desc label

2.2.28. model.limitedPhrase

model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	catDesc macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited
Members	model.emphLike[foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi]

model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike[depth dim geo height measure num width] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike[geogFeat] model.persNamePart[addName forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country district geogName placeName region settlement]] idno]] model.pPart.editorial[abbr am choice ex expan subst] model.pPart.msdesc[catchwords dimensions heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark] model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ref]

2.2.29. model.linePart

model.linePart groups transcriptional elements which appear within lines or zones of a source-oriented transcription within a <sourceDoc> element.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	zone
Members	model.hiLike[hi] add choice damage del seg unclear zone

2.2.30. model.listLike

model.listLike groups list-like elements. [3.7. Lists]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.inter sourceDesc
Members	list

2.2.31. model.measureLike

model.measureLike groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.5.3. Numbers and Measures]
--

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.pPart.data
Members	depth dim geo height measure num width

2.2.32. model.milestoneLike

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System 3.10.3. Milestone Elements]
--

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	listBibl model.global subst
Members	fw lb pb

2.2.33. model.msItemPart

model.msItemPart groups elements which can appear within a manuscript item description.
--

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	msItem

Members	model.biblLike[bibl listBibl msDesc] model.msQuoteLike[colophon explicit finalRubric incipit rubric title] model.quoteLike[cit quote] model.respLike[author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor] decoNote filiation idno msItem msItemStruct textLang
----------------	--

2.2.34. model.msQuoteLike

model.msQuoteLike groups elements which represent passages such as titles quoted from a manuscript as a part of its description.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.msItemPart
Members	colophon explicit finalRubric incipit rubric title

2.2.35. model.nameLike

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.addrPart model.pPart.data
Members	model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike[geogFeat] model.persNamePart[addName forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country district geogName placeName region settlement]] idno
Note	A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

2.2.36. model.nameLike.agent

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.nameLike respStmt
Members	name orgName persName
Note	This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

2.2.37. model.noteLike

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.8. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	adminInfo model.global msItemStruct
Members	note

2.2.38. model.offsetLike

model.offsetLike groups elements which can appear only as part of a place name. [13.2.3. Place]

Names]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.nameLike
Members	geogFeat

2.2.39. model.pLike

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	availability binding bindingDesc custodialHist decoDesc editionStmt encodingDesc handDesc history layoutDesc model.divPart msContents msDesc msFrag msItem msItemStruct msPart objectDesc physDesc projectDesc publicationStmt recordHist scriptDesc seal sealDesc sourceDesc supportDesc typeDesc
Members	p

2.2.40. model.pPart.data

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase
Members	model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike[depth dim geo height measure num width] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName]] model.offsetLike[geogFeat] model.persNamePart[addName forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country district geogName placeName region settlement]] idno]

2.2.41. model.pPart.edit

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	bibl model.phrase
Members	model.pPart.editorial[abbr am choice ex expan subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr damage del orig reg sic supplied unclear]

2.2.42. model.pPart.editorial

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit
Members	abbr am choice ex expan subst

2.2.43. model.pPart.msdesc

model.pPart.msdesc groups phrase-level elements used in manuscript description. [10. Manuscript Description]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.limitedPhrase model.phrase
Members	catchwords dimensions heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark

2.2.44. model.pPart.transcriptional

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	am model.pPart.edit
Members	add corr damage del orig reg sic supplied unclear

2.2.45. model.persNamePart

model.persNamePart groups elements which form part of a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

Module	namesdates — Schema
Used by	model.nameLike
Members	addName forename surname

2.2.46. model.phrase

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	date head I macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara origDate
Members	model.graphicLike[formula graphic] model.highlighted[model.emphLike[foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi]] model.IPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike[depth dim geo height measure num width] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike[geogFeat] model.persNamePart[addName forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country district geoName placeName region settlement] idno]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[abbr am choice ex expand subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr damage del orig reg sic supplied unclear]] model.pPart.msdesc[catchwords dimensions heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark] model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ref] model.segLike[seg] model.specDescLike
Note	This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

2.2.47. model.physDescPart

model.physDescPart groups specialized elements forming part of the physical description of a manuscript or similar written source.

Module	msdescription — Schema
Used by	physDesc
Members	accMat additions bindingDesc decoDesc handDesc musicNotation objectDesc scriptDesc sealDesc typeDesc

2.2.48. model.placeNamePart

model.placeNamePart groups elements which form part of a place name. [13.2.3. Place Names]	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	altIdentifier model.placeStateLike msIdentifier
Members	country district geogName placeName region settlement

2.2.49. model.placeStateLike

model.placeStateLike groups elements which describe changing states of a place.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.nameLike
Members	model.placeNamePart[country district geogName placeName region settlement]

2.2.50. model.profileDescPart

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	profileDesc
Members	textClass

2.2.51. model.ptrLike

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References]	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	bibl cit model.limitedPhrase model.phrase model.publicationStmtPart.detail relatedItem series
Members	ref

2.2.52. model.publicationStmtPart.agency

model.publicationStmtPart.agency groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	publicationStmt
Members	authority distributor publisher

Note	The ‘agency’ child elements, while not required, are required if one of the ‘detail’ child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a ‘detail’ child element without a preceding ‘agency’ child element. See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail .
-------------	--

2.2.53. model.publicationStmtPart.detail

model.publicationStmtPart.detail groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](#)]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	publicationStmt
Members	model.ptrLike[ref] address availability date idno pubPlace
Note	A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it. See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency .

2.2.54. model.qLike

model.qLike groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](#)]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	cit macro . phraseSeq model.inter
Members	model.quoteLike[cit quote] q

2.2.55. model.quoteLike

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	model.msItemPart model.qLike
Members	cit quote

2.2.56. model.resourceLike

model.resourceLike groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](#)]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	TEI
Members	facsimile text

2.2.57. model.respLike

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	editionStmt model.biblPart model.msItemPart titleStmt

Members	author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor
----------------	---

2.2.58. model.segLike

model.segLike groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	bibl model.phrase
Members	seg
Note	The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.

2.2.59. model.teiHeaderPart

model.teiHeaderPart groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	teiHeader
Members	encodingDesc include profileDesc

2.2.60. model.titlepagePart

model.titlepagePart groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	msItem
Members	graphic

2.3. Attribute classes

2.3.1. att.ascribed

att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	att.ascribed.directed[q] change
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@who indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Data type occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p> <p>In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are</p>

linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the @who attribute.

```
<castItem type="role">
  <role xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
  <role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>
  <roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#Barnardo">
  <speaker>Bernardo</speaker>
  <l n="1">Who's there?</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#Francisco">
  <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
  <l n="2">Nay, answer me: stand,
and unfold yourself.</l>
</sp>
```

Note For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

2.3.2. att.ascribed.directed

att.ascribed.directed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be directed at a group or individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	q
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.ascribed (@who)</p> <p>@toWhom indicates the person, or group of people, to whom a speech act or action is directed. Status Optional Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p> <p>In the following example from Mary Pix's The False Friend, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the @toWhom attribute, which is used to specify who the speech is directed to. Additionally, the <stage> includes @toWhom to indicate the directionality of the action.</p> <pre><castItem type="role"> <role xml:id="emil">Emilius. </role> </castItem> <castItem type="role"> <role xml:id="lov">Lovisa</role> </castItem> <castItem type="role"> <role xml:id="serv">A servant</role></pre>

```

</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp toWhom="#lov"
  who="#emil">
  <speaker>Emil.</speaker>
  <l n="1">My love!</l>
</sp>
<sp toWhom="#emil"
  who="#lov">
  <speaker>Lov.</speaker>
  <l n="2">I have no Witness of my
  Noble Birth</l>
  <stage toWhom="#serv"
    who="emil">Pointing to her Woman.
</stage>
  <l>But that poor helpless wretch—
</l>
</sp>

```

Note To indicate the recipient of written correspondence, use the elements used in section [2.4.6. Correspondence Description](#), rather than a @toWhom attribute.

2.3.3. att.breaking

att.breaking provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [\[3.10.3. Milestone Elements\]](#)

Module	tei — Schema								
Members	lb pb								
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@break indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.</p> <p>Status Recommended</p> <p>Type data.enumerated</p> <p>Samples</p> <table> <tr> <td>values</td> <td>the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace</td> </tr> <tr> <td>include</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>no</td> <td>the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace</td> </tr> <tr> <td>maybe</td> <td>the encoding does not take any position on this issue.</td> </tr> </table> <p>In the following lines from the "Dream of the Rood", linebreaks occur in the middle of the words <i>lāðost</i> and <i>reord-berendum</i>.</p>	values	the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace	include		no	the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace	maybe	the encoding does not take any position on this issue.
values	the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace								
include									
no	the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace								
maybe	the encoding does not take any position on this issue.								

```

<ab> ...eƿesa tome iu icƿæs
3eƿorden ƿita heardoft .
leodum la<lb break="no"/> ðost
ærþan ichim lifes
ƿe3 rihtne 3erymde reord
be<lb break="no"/>
rendum hƿæt me þa3eƿeorðode ƿuldres
ealdor ofer...
</ab>

```

2.3.4. att.cReferencing

att.cReferencing provides an attribute which may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

Module	tei — Schema
Members	ref term
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@cRef</p> <p>(canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a <code><refsDecl></code> element in the TEI header</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Type data.text</p> <p>Note The value of <code>@cRef</code> should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target. The <code><refsDecl></code> to use may be indicated with the <code>@decls</code> attribute.</p> <p>Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <code><ptr></code> element.</p>

2.3.5. att.canonical

att.canonical provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [[13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](#)]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	att.naming [att.personal [addName forename name orgName persName placeName surname] author collection country district editor geogFeat geogName institution origPlace pubPlace region repository settlement] authority date distributor funder material objectType principal publisher resp respStmt sponsor term title
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@key</p> <p>provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Type data.text</p>

```
<author>
<name key="name 427308"
      type="organisation">[New Zealand
Parliament, Legislative Council]
</name>
</author>
```

```
<author>
<name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-
1885)"
      ref="http://www.idref.fr/02692760
8">Victor Hugo</name>
</author>
```

Note The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.

No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the @key attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a @ref attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in RFC 4151.

@ref

(reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status Optional

Data type occurrences of [teidata.pointer](#) separated by whitespace

```
<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109
557338"
      type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>
```

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

2.3.6. att.citing

att.citing provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited. [1.3.1. [Attribute Classes](#)]

Module	tei — Schema
--------	--------------

Members	biblScope citedRange
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@unit identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume, entry. Status optional Data type data.enumerated</p> <p>Suggested value the element contains a volume</p> <p>include: number.</p> <p>issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.</p> <p>page the element contains a page number or page range.</p> <p>line the element contains a line number or line range.</p> <p>chapter the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)</p> <p>part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.</p> <p>column the element identifies a column.</p> <p>entry the element identifies an entry number or label in a list of entries.</p> <p>@from specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the @unit attribute. Status optional Data type data.word</p> <p>@to specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the @unit attribute. Status optional Data type data.word</p>

2.3.7. att.coordinated

att.coordinated provides attributes which can be used to position their parent element within a two dimensional coordinate system.	
Module	transcr — Schema
Members	surface zone
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@start indicates the element within a transcription of the text containing at least the start of the writing represented by this zone or surface. Status optional Data type data.pointer</p>

	@ulx	gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space. Status Optional Data type teidata.numeric
	@uly	gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space. Status Optional Data type teidata.numeric
	@lrx	gives the x coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space. Status Optional Data type teidata.numeric
	@lry	gives the y coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space. Status Optional Data type teidata.numeric
	@points	identifies a two dimensional area within the bounding box specified by the other attributes by means of a series of pairs of numbers, each of which gives the x,y coordinates of a point on a line enclosing the area. Status Optional Data type occurrences of teidata.point separated by whitespace

2.3.8. att.damaged

att.damaged provides attributes describing the nature of any physical damage affecting a reading.
[\[11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 1.3.1. Attribute Classes\]](#)

Module	tei — Schema
Members	damage
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.written (@hand)</p> <p>@agent categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified. StatusOptional Data typeteidata.enumerated Sampled values damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges include: leaf edges mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface smoke damage results from smoke</p> <p>@degree provides a coded representation of the degree of damage, either as a number between 0 (undamaged) and 1 (very extensively damaged), or as one of the codes high, medium, low, or</p>

	<p>unknown. The <code><damage></code> element with the <code>@degree</code> attribute should only be used where the text may be read with some confidence; text supplied from other sources should be tagged as <code><supplied></code>.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data type <code>tei.probCert</code></p> <p>Note The <code><damage></code> element is appropriate where it is desired to record the fact of damage although this has not affected the readability of the text, for example a weathered inscription. Where the damage has rendered the text more or less illegible either the <code><unclear></code> tag (for partial illegibility) or the <code><gap></code> tag (for complete illegibility, with no text supplied) should be used, with the information concerning the damage given in the attribute values of these tags. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of the use of these tags in particular circumstances.</p>
	<p>@group</p> <p>assigns an arbitrary number to each stretch of damage regarded as forming part of the same physical phenomenon.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data type <code>tei.count</code></p>

2.3.9. att.datable

att.datable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	acquisition binding change country custEvent date district foliation geogFeat geogName idno licence name orgName origDate origPlace origin persName placeName provenance region resp seal settlement stamp title
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.datable.w3c</code> (<code>@when</code>, <code>@notBefore</code>, <code>@notAfter</code>, <code>@from</code>, <code>@to</code>) <code>att.datable.iso</code> (<code>@when-iso</code>, <code>@notBefore-iso</code>, <code>@notAfter-iso</code>, <code>@from-iso</code>, <code>@to-iso</code>) <code>att.datable.custom</code> (<code>@when-custom</code>, <code>@notBefore-custom</code>, <code>@notAfter-custom</code>, <code>@from-custom</code>, <code>@to-custom</code>, <code>@datingPoint</code>, <code>@datingMethod</code>)</p> <p>@calendar</p> <p>indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data type <code>tei.pointer</code></p> <p>Schematron</p> <pre><sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]"> <sch:assert test="string-length(.) > 0"> @calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element</pre>

```

belongs, but this
<sch:name/> element has no
textual content.</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

```

He was born on
`<date calendar="#gregorian">Feb.`
`22, 1732</date>`
`(<date calendar="#julian"`
`when="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11,`
`1731/32,`
`O.S.</date>).`

Note Note that the `@calendar` attribute (unlike `@datingMethod` defined in `att.datable.custom`) defines the calendar system of the date in the original material defined by the parent element, *not* the calendar to which the date is normalized.

`@period`

supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.

Status optional

Datatype `teidata.pointer`

Note

This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the `att.datable.w3c` class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the `att.datable.iso` and `att.datable.custom` classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

2.3.10. `att.datable.custom`

att.datable.custom provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [13.3.7. Dates and Times]

Module	namesdates — Schema
Members	<code>att.datable[acquisition binding change country custEvent date district foliation geogFeat geogName idno licence name orgName origDate origPlace origin persName placeName provenance region resp seal settlement stamp title]</code>
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@when-custom supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of <code>teidata.word</code> separated by whitespace</p> <p>The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are <i>not</i> valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system</p>

```

<p>Alhazen died in Cairo on the
<date when="1040-03-06"
      when-custom="431-06-12"> 12th day
of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH
</date>.</p>
<p>The current world will end at
the
<date when="2012-12-21"
      when-custom="13.0.0.0.0">end of
B'ak'tun 13</date>.</p>
<p>The Battle of Meggidu
(<date when-
      custom="Thutmose_III:23">23rd year
of reign of Thutmose III</date>).
</p>
<p>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX
plus minus sub
<date when-custom="Ind:4-10-11">die
XI mensis Octobris indictione
IIII</date>
</p>

```

Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents. The @when-custom attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats.

@notBefore-custom

specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.

Statusoptional

Datatype occurrences of `teidata.word`
separated by whitespace

@notAfter-custom

specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.

Statusoptional

Datatype occurrences of `teidata.word`
separated by whitespace

@from-custom

indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.

Statusoptional

Datatype occurrences of `teidata.word`
separated by whitespace

```

<event datingMethod="#julian"
      from-custom="1666-09-02"
      to-custom="1666-09-05"
      xml:id="FIRE1">
  <head>The Great Fire of
London</head>
  <p>The Great Fire of London burned
through a large part
of the city of London.</p>
</event>

```

@to-custom

indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.

Statusoptional

	<p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace</p>
@datingPoint	<p>supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.pointer</p>
@datingMethod	<p>supplies a pointer to a <calendar> element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.pointer</p>
	<p>Containayng the Originall, Antiquity, Increaife, Moderne eftate, and defcription of that Citiie, written in the yeare <date calendar="#julian" datingMethod="#julian" when-custom="1598">1598</date>. by John Stow Citizen of London.</p> <p>In this example, the @calendar attribute points to a <calendar> element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the <date> element is a Julian date, and the @datingMethod attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the @when-custom attribute value is Julian too.</p> <pre><date datingMethod="#creationOfWorld" when="1382-06-28" when-custom="6890-06-20"> μηνὶ^{τοῦ} Ιουνίου εἰς <num>κ</num> ξτους <num>ζωὴ</num> </date></pre> <p>In this example, a date is given in a Mediaeval text measured "from the creation of the world", which is normalised (in @when) to the Gregorian date, but is also normalized (in @when-custom) to a machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the Creation.</p> <p>Note Note that the @datingMethod attribute (unlike @calendar defined in att.datable) defines the calendar or dating system to which the date described by the parent element is normalized (i.e. in the @when-custom or other @X-custom attributes), <i>not</i> the calendar of the original date in the element.</p>

2.3.11. att.datable.iso

att.datable.iso provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the

ISO 8601 standard. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times]

Module	namesdates — Schema
Members	att.datable[acquisition binding change country custEvent date district foliation geogFeat geogName idno licence name orgName origDate origPlace origin persName placeName provenance region resp seal settlement stamp title]
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@when-iso</p> <p>supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Datatypehttp://data/temporal.iso</p> <p>The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are <i>not</i> valid W3C format normalizations.</p> <pre><date when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date> <date when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date> <time when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time> <time when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time> <date when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</date> <time when-iso="03:00">3 A.M.</time> <time when-iso="14">around two</time> <time when-iso="15,5">half past three</time></pre> <p>All of the examples of the @when attribute in the att.datable.w3c class are also valid with respect to this attribute.</p> <pre>He likes to be punctual. I said <q> <time when-iso="12">around noon</time> </q>, and he showed up at <time when-iso="12:00:00">12 O'clock</time> on the dot.</pre> <p>The second occurrence of <time> could have been encoded with the @when attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification. The first occurrence could not.</p> <p>@notBefore-iso</p> <p>specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Datatypehttp://data/temporal.iso</p> <p>@notAfter-iso</p> <p>specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.</p>

	<p>Status Optional Datatype xdata.temporal.iso</p> <p>@from-iso indicates the starting point of the period in standard form. Status Optional Datatype xdata.temporal.iso</p> <p>@to-iso indicates the ending point of the period in standard form. Status Optional Datatype xdata.temporal.iso</p>
Note	The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601, using the Gregorian calendar.
Note	If both @when-iso and @dur-iso are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is, <div style="background-color: #e0f2e0; padding: 10px; border: 1px solid #80c080;"> <pre><date dur-iso="P8D" when-iso="2007-06-01"/></pre> </div> indicates the same time period as <div style="background-color: #e0f2e0; padding: 10px; border: 1px solid #80c080;"> <pre><date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/></pre> </div> In providing a ‘regularized’ form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

2.3.12. att.datable.w3c

att.datable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	att.datable[acquisition binding change country custEvent date district foliation geogFeat geogName idno licence name orgName origDate origPlace origin persName placeName provenance region resp seal settlement stamp title]
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@when supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd. Status Optional Datatype xdata.temporal.w3c</p> <p>Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.</p> <div style="background-color: #e0f2e0; padding: 10px; border: 1px solid #80c080;"> <pre><p> <date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date> <date when="1996-09- 24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date></pre> </div>

```

<time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>
<time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
<date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
<date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
<date when="---01">the first of the month</date>
<date when="--08">August</date>
<date when="2006">MMVI</date>
<date when="0056">AD 56</date>
<date when="-0056">56 BC</date>
</p>
```

This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the <date calendar="#julian" when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.

```

<opener>
  <dateline>
    <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
    <date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>To Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday
  <time when="12:00:00">noon.
</time>
</opener>
```

@notBefore

specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Data type [data.temporal.w3c](#)

@notAfter

specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Data type [data.temporal.w3c](#)

@from

indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Data type [data.temporal.w3c](#)

@to

indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Data type [data.temporal.w3c](#)

Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal" test="@notBefore @notAfter @from @to">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal" test="@notBefore">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule></pre>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal" test="@notAfter">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule></pre>
Example	<pre><date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date></pre>
Note	<p>The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by <i>XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition</i>, using the Gregorian calendar.</p> <p>The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, ---dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used.</p> <p>Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.</p>

2.3.13. att.datcat

att.datcat provides the @dcr:datacat and @dcr:ValueDatacat attributes which are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISO Cat at <http://www.isocat.org/>. [9.5.2. Lexical View 18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	att.segLike[seg]
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@datcat contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISO Cat.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p>

	<p>@valueDatcat</p> <p>contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p>
Example	<p>In this example @dcr:datcat relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and @dcr:valueDatcat the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at www.isocat.org, which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.</p> <pre><fs xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr"> <f dcr:datcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345" dcr:valueDatcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC- 1256" fVal="#commonNoun" name="POS"/> </fs></pre>
Note	<p>ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Persistent Identifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at http://www.isocat.org/12620/), which provides two attributes, @dcr:datcat and @dcr:valueDatcat.</p>

2.3.14. att.declarable

<p>att.declarable provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose @decls attribute. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]</p>	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	availability bibl listBibl projectDesc sourceDesc textClass
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@default indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.truthValue</p> <p>Legatrue This element is selected if its parent is selected</p> <p>values</p> <p>are:</p> <p>false This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected. [Default]</p>
Note	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a

Text. Only one element of a particular type may have a @default attribute with a value of true.

2.3.15. att.declaring

att.declaring provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	body div facsimile geo graphic lg msDesc p ref surface surfaceGrp term text
Attributes	Attributes @decls identifies one or more <i>declarable elements</i> within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content. Status Optional Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
Note	The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text.

2.3.16. att.dimensions

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	att.damaged[damage] add date del depth dim dimensions ex gap geogFeat height origDate subst supplied unclear width
Attributes	Attributes att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) @unit names the unit used for the measurement Status Optional Datatype teidata.enumerated Suggested values (centimetres) includen (millimetres) in (inches) line lines of text char (characters) characters of text @quantity specifies the length in the units specified Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric @extent indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words. Status Optional

	Data type
	<pre><gap extent="5 words"/></pre>
	<pre><height extent="half the page"/></pre>
@precision	characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes. Status Optional Data type data.certainty
@scope	where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement. Status Optional Data type data.enumerated Sample values measurement applies to all instances. include: instances. most measurement applies to most of the instances inspected. range measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

2.3.17. att.divLike

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4. Default Text Structure]	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	div lg
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.fragmentable (@part)</p> <p>@org (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized. StatusOptional Data typedata.enumerated Legalcomposite values no claim is made about the are: sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships. uniform the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.[Default]</p>
@sample	indicates whether this division is a sample of the

	<p>original source and if so, from which part.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Data typedata.enumerated</p> <p>Legalinitial</p> <p>values division lacks material present at start.</p> <p>are: end in source.</p> <p>medial</p> <p>division lacks material at start and end.</p> <p>final</p> <p>division lacks material at start.</p> <p>unknown</p> <p>position of sampled material within original unknown.</p> <p>complete</p> <p>division is not a sample.[Default]</p>
--	---

2.3.18. att.docStatus

	<p>att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.</p>
Module	tei — Schema
Members	bibl change msDesc revisionDesc
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@status</p> <p>describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Data typedata.enumerated</p> <p>Sampleapproved</p> <p>valuescandidate</p> <p>includescleared</p> <p>deprecated</p> <p>draft</p> <p>[Default]</p> <p>embargoed</p> <p>expired</p> <p>frozen</p> <p>galley</p> <p>proposed</p> <p>published</p> <p>recommendation</p> <p>submitted</p> <p>unfinished</p> <p>withdrawn</p>
Example	<pre><revisionDesc status="published"> <change status="published" when="2010-10-21"/> <change status="cleared" when="2010-10-02"/> <change status="embargoed" when="2010-08-02"/> <change status="frozen" when="2010-05-01" who="#MSM"/> <change status="draft" when="2010-03-01"></pre>

```

    who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>

```

2.3.19. att.editLike

<p>att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes 10.3.1. Origination 13.3.2. The Person Element 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]</p>	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	att.transcriptional[add del subst] am corr date ex expan gap geogFeat geogName name orgName origDate origPlace origin persName placeName reg supplied unclear
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@evidence indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation. Status optional Datatype occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace</p> <p>Suggested values there is internal evidence to support the intervention. include: support the intervention.</p> <p>external there is external evidence to support the intervention.</p> <p>conjecture the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.</p> <p>@instant indicates whether this is an instant revision or not. Status optional Datatype teidata.xTruthValue Default false</p>
Note	The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.
Note	Each pointer on the @source (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.

2.3.20. att.edition

<p>att.edition provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.</p>	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	lb pb

Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@ed (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text. StatusOptional Data typeoccurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace</p> <p>@edRef (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text. StatusOptional Data typeoccurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p>
Example	<pre><1>Of Mans First Disobedience,<1b ed="1674"/> and<1b ed="1667"/> the Fruit</1> <1>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<1b ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</1> <1>Brought Death into the World,<1b ed="1667"/> and all<1b ed="1674"/> our woe,</1></pre>
Example	<pre><listBibl> <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937"> <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>, <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>, <date>1937</date> </bibl> <bibl xml:id="stapledon1968"> <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>, <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date> </bibl> </listBibl> <!-- ... --> <p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their strength maintaining the<pb edRef="#stapledon1968" n="411"/>essentials of their ancient culture, still living their personal lives in zest and endless novelty of action, ... I saw myself still preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid con-<pb edRef="#stapledon1937" n="291"/>sciousness;</p></pre>

2.3.21. att.fragmentable

att.fragmentable provides an attribute for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

Module	tei — Schema
Members	att.divLike[div lg] att.segLike[seg] p
Attributes	Attributes

@part	specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.
Status	optional
Data type	data.enumerated
Legal values	(yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect N
	(no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness [Default]
I	(initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element
M	(medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element
F	(final) this is the final part of a fragmented element
Note	The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

2.3.22. att.global

	<p>att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]</p>
Module	tei — Schema
Members	TEI abbr accMat acquisition add addName additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am author authority availability bibl biblScope binding bindingDesc body catDesc catchwords category change choice cit citedRange classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr countermark country custEvent custodialHist damage date decoDesc decoNote del depth desc dim dimensions distributor district div edition editionStmt editor email encodingDesc ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric foliation foreign forename formula funder fw gap geo geogFeat geogName graphic handDesc handNote head height heraldry hi history idno incipit institution item keywords l label layout layoutDesc lb lg licence list listBibl locus locusGrp material measure msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name note num objectDesc objectType orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote recordHist ref reg region relatedItem repository resp respStmt revisionDesc rubric scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seg series settlement sic signatures source sourceDesc sponsor stamp street subst summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surrogates taxonomy teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt typeDesc typeNote unclear watermark width zone
Attributes	Attributes att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

@xml:id	<p>(identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data type</p> <p>Note The @xml:id attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.10. Reference Systems.</p>
@n	<p>(number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data type text</p> <p>Note The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.</p>
@xml:lang	<p>(language) indicates the language of the element content using a 'tag' generated according to BCP 47.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data type language</p>

```
<p> ... The consequences of  
this rapid depopulation were the  
loss of the last  
<foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</fore  
ign> or chief  
(Routledge 1920:205,210) and their  
connections to  
ancestral territorial organization.  
</p>
```

Note The xml:lang value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify xml:lang at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the teiHeader from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.

The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step

guide, see
<https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php>.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its @ident attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

@xml:base

provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

StatusOptional

Data type[pointer](#)

```
<div type="bibl">
  <head>Bibliography</head>
  <listBibl xml:base="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">
    <bibl>
      <author>
        <name>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="LandLVowOf.sgm">
        <title>The Vow of the Peacock</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl>
      <author>
        <name>Compton, Margaret Clephane</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="NortMIrene.sgm">
        <title>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl>
      <author>
        <name>Taylor, Jane</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="TaylJEssay.sgm">
        <title>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
  </listBibl>
</div>
```

@xml:space

signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

StatusOptional

Data type[enumerated](#)

Legaldefault

values signals that the application's default
are: white-space processing modes are

	<p>preserve indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space</p> <p>Note The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle <code>xml:space</code> correctly.</p>
--	---

2.3.23. att.global.change

att.global.change supplies the <code>@change</code> attribute, allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated.	
Module	transcr — Schema
Members	att.global[TEI abbr accMat acquisition add addName additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am author authority availability bibl biblScope binding bindingDesc body catDesc catchwords category change choice cit citedRange classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr countermark country custEvent custodialHist damage date decoDesc decoNote del depth desc dim dimensions distributor district div edition editionStmt editor email encodingDesc ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric foliation foreign forename formula funder fw gap geo geogFeat geogName graphic handDesc handNote head height heraldry hi history idno incipit institution item keywords l label layout layoutDesc lb lg licence list listBibl locus locusGrp material measure msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name note num objectDesc objectType orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote recordHist ref reg region relatedItem repository resp respStmt revisionDesc rubric scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seg series settlement sic signatures source sourceDesc sponsor stamp street subst summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surrogates taxonomy teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt typeDesc typeNote unclear watermark width zone] countermark
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@change points to one or more <code><change></code> elements documenting a state or revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its children have been assigned by the encoder.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p>

2.3.24. att.global.facs

att.global.facs provides an attribute used to express correspondence between an element containing transcribed text and all or part of an image representing that text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]	
Module	transcr — Schema
Members	att.global[TEI abbr accMat acquisition add addName additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am author authority availability bibl biblScope binding bindingDesc body catDesc catchwords category change choice cit citedRange classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr countermark country custEvent custodialHist damage date decoDesc decoNote del depth desc dim dimensions distributor district div edition editionStmt editor email encodingDesc ex expan explicit

	extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric foliation foreign forename formula funder fw gap geo geogFeat geogName graphic handDesc handNote head height heraldry hi history idno incipit institution item keywords l label layout layoutDesc lb lg licence list listBibl locus locusGrp material measure msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name note num objectDesc objectType orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote recordHist ref reg region relatedItem repository resp respStmt revisionDesc rubric scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seg series settlement sic signatures source sourceDesc sponsor stamp street subst summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surrogates taxonomy teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt typeDesc typeNote unclear watermark width zone]
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@facs (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p>

2.3.25. att.global.linking

att.global.linking provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]

Module	linking — Schema
Members	att.global[TEI abbr accMat acquisition add addName additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am author authority availability bibl biblScope binding bindingDesc body catDesc catchwords category change choice cit citedRange classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr countermark country custEvent custodialHist damage date decoDesc decoNote del depth desc dim dimensions distributor district div edition editionStmt editor email encodingDesc ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric foliation foreign forename formula funder fw gap geo geogFeat geogName graphic handDesc handNote head height heraldry hi history idno incipit institution item keywords l label layout layoutDesc lb lg licence list listBibl locus locusGrp material measure msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name note num objectDesc objectType orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote recordHist ref reg region relatedItem repository resp respStmt revisionDesc rubric scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seg series settlement sic signatures source sourceDesc sponsor stamp street subst summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surrogates taxonomy teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt typeDesc typeNote unclear watermark width zone] countermark
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p> <pre><group> <text xml:id="t1-g1-t1" xml:lang="mi"> <body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1"> <div type="chapter"></pre>

```

<head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te
Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua
Maori, 1876.</head>
<p>...</p>
</div>
</body>
</text>
<text xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
xml:lang="en">
<body corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1"
xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1">
<div type="chapter">
<head>An Act to regulate the
Sale, Letting, and Disposal of
Native Lands, 1876.</head>
<p>...</p>
</div>
</body>
</text>
</group>

```

In this example a `<group>` contains two `<text>`s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using `@corresp`. The language is indicated using `@xml:lang`, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the `@corresp` and the tag pointed to by the `@corresp` inherit the value from their immediate parent.

```

<!-- In a placeography called
"places.xml" -->
<place corresp="people.xml#LOND2
people.xml#GENI1"
xml:id="LOND1">
<placeName>London</placeName>
<desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>
<!-- In a literary personography
called "people.xml" -->
<person corresp="places.xml#LOND1
#GENI1"
xml:id="LOND2">
<persName type="lit">London</persName>
<note>
<p>Allegorical character
representing the city of
<placeName ref="places.xml#LOND1">L
ondon</placeName>.</p>
</note>
</person>
<person corresp="places.xml#LOND1
#LOND2"
xml:id="GENI1">
<persName type="lit">London's
Genius</persName>
<note>
<p>Personification of London's
genius. Appears as an
allegorical character in
mayoral shows.
</p>
</note>
</person>

```

In this example, a `<place>` element containing information about the city of London is linked

	<p>with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.</p>
@synch	<p>(synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by whitespace</p>
@sameAs	<p>points to an element that is the same as the current element.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Datatype<code>teidata.pointer</code></p>
@copyOf	<p>points to an element of which the current element is a copy.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Datatype<code>teidata.pointer</code></p> <p>Note Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.</p>
@next	<p>points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Datatype<code>teidata.pointer</code></p> <p>Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.</p>
@prev	<p>(previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Datatype<code>teidata.pointer</code></p> <p>Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.</p>
@exclude	<p>points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of <code>teidata.pointer</code> separated by whitespace</p>
@select	<p>selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p>

Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

2.3.26. att.global.rendition

att.global.rendition provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	att.global[TEI abbr accMat acquisition add addName additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am author authority availability bibl biblScope binding bindingDesc body catDesc catchwords category change choice cit citedRange classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr countermark country custEvent custodialHist damage date decoDesc decoNote del depth desc dim dimensions distributor district div edition editionStmt editor email encodingDesc ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric foliation foreign forename formula funder fw gap geo geogFeat geogName graphic handDesc handNote head height heraldry hi history idno incipit institution item keywords l label layout layoutDesc lb lg licence list listBibl locus locusGrp material measure msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name note num objectDesc objectType orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote recordHist ref reg region relatedItem repository resp respStmt revisionDesc rubric scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seg series settlement sic signatures source sourceDesc sponsor stamp street subst summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surrogates taxonomy teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt typeDesc typeNote unclear watermark width zone] countermark
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@rend</p> <p>(rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"><pre><head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)"> <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her <lb/> <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>. </head></pre></div> <p>Note These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the @rend attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some</p>

potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the @rend attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.

@style

contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text

Status: optional

Datatype: teidata.text

```
<head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">
<lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse
<lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
Her
<lb/>
<hi style="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.

</head>
```

Note: Unlike the attribute values of @rend, which uses whitespace as a separator, the @style attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output.

The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the `<styleDefDecl>` element in the TEI header.

If @style and @rendition are both present on an element, then @style overrides or complements @rendition. @style should not be used in conjunction with @rend, because the latter does not employ a formal style definition language.

@rendition

points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

Status: optional

Datatype: occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<head rendition="#ac #sc">
<lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse
<lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
Her
<lb/>
<hi rendition="#normal">New
Blazing-World</hi>.

</head>
```

```

<!-- elsewhere... -->
<rendition scheme="css"
  xml:id="sc">font-variant:
small-caps</rendition>
<rendition scheme="css"
  xml:id="normal">font-variant:
normal</rendition>
<rendition scheme="css"
  xml:id="ac">text-align:
center</rendition>

```

NoteThe @rendition attribute is used in a very similar way to the @class attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.

If @rendition is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with @rend. Where both @rendition and @rend are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.

Each URI provided should indicate a <rendition> element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the @scheme attribute.

Schematron

```

<sch:rule context="*[@rend]">
<sch:report role="info"
  test="self::tei:hi and not(every $r in tokenize(@rend, '\s+')
  [string-length()
  gt 0] satisfies $r = ('bold', 'italic', 'smallcaps', 'roman',
  'superscript',
  'subscript', 'underline', 'overline', 'strikethrough'))"> Any
values can be used in rend attributes, but the web site currently
only supports combinations of:
bold, italic, roman, smallcaps, superscript, subscript,
underline, overline, and strikethrough.
</sch:report>
<sch:assert role="info" test="self::tei:hi"> The web site
currently only supports rend attributes for hi elements. Using it
on <sch:value-of select="name(.)"/>
elements is valid but will be ignored.
</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>
<sch:rule context="*[@rendition or @style]">
<sch:assert role="info" test="false()"> The web site currently
ignores rendition and style attributes.
</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

```

Schematron

```

<sch:rule context="tei:*[@key]">
<sch:assert role="warn"

```

```

    test="string-length(normalize-space(string())) > 1"> Elements
with key attributes should have some content (because they will
be displayed
as links, and links need text for readers to click on.)
</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

```

2.3.27. att.global.responsibility

att.global.responsibility provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it.
[\[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.4. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 17.3. Spans and Interpretations 13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents\]](#)

Module	tei — Schema
Members	att.global[TEI abbr accMat acquisition add addName additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am author authority availability bibl biblScope binding bindingDesc body catDesc catchwords category change choice cit citedRange classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr countermark country custEvent custodialHist damage date decoDesc decoNote del depth desc dim dimensions distributor district div edition editionStmt editor email encodingDesc ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric foliation foreign forename formula funder fw gap geo geogFeat geogName graphic handDesc handNote head height heraldry hi history idno incipit institution item keywords l label layout layoutDesc lb lg licence list listBibl locus locusGrp material measure msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name note num objectDesc objectType orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote recordHist ref reg region relatedItem repository resp respStmt revisionDesc rubric scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seg series settlement sic signatures source sourceDesc sponsor stamp street subst summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surrogates taxonomy teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt typeDesc typeNote unclear watermark width zone] countermark
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@cert (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation. Status Optional Datatype teidata.probCert</p> <p>@resp (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber. Status Optional Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace Note To reduce the ambiguity of a @resp pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that @resp be used to point not to an agent (<person> or <org>) but to a <respStmt>, <author>, <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in</p>

	part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).						
Example	<pre> Blessed are the <choice> <sic>cheesemakers</sic> <corr cert="high" resp="#editor">peacemakers</corr> </choice>: for they shall be called the children of God. </pre>						
Example	<pre> <!-- in the <text> ... --><lg> <!-- ... --> <1>Punkes, Panders, bafe extortionizing sla<choice> <sic>n</sic> <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u</corr> </choice>es,</1> <!-- ... --> </lg> <!-- in the <teiHeader> ... --> <!-- ... --> <respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber"> <resp when="2014">Transcriber</resp> <name>Janelle Jenstad</name> </respStmt> </pre>						
2.3.28. att.global.source	<p>att.global.source provides an attribute used by elements to point to an external source. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Module</td><td>tei — Schema</td></tr> <tr> <td>Members</td><td>att.global[TEI abbr accMat acquisition add addName additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am author authority availability bibl biblScope binding bindingDesc body catDesc catchwords category change choice cit citedRange classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr countermark country custEvent custodialHist damage date decoDesc decoNote del depth desc dim dimensions distributor district div edition editionStmt editor email encodingDesc ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric foliation foreign forename formula funder fw gap geo geogFeat geogName graphic handDesc handNote head height heraldry hi history idno incipit institution item keywords l label layout layoutDesc lb lg licence list listBibl locus locusGrp material measure msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name note num objectDesc objectType orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote recordHist ref reg region relatedItem repository resp respStmt revisionDesc rubric scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seg series settlement sic signatures source sourceDesc sponsor stamp street subst summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surrogates taxonomy teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt typeDesc typeNote unclear watermark width zone] countermark</td></tr> <tr> <td>Attributes</td><td> <p>Attributes</p> <p>@source</p> <p>specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer</p> </td></tr> </table>	Module	tei — Schema	Members	att.global[TEI abbr accMat acquisition add addName additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am author authority availability bibl biblScope binding bindingDesc body catDesc catchwords category change choice cit citedRange classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr countermark country custEvent custodialHist damage date decoDesc decoNote del depth desc dim dimensions distributor district div edition editionStmt editor email encodingDesc ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric foliation foreign forename formula funder fw gap geo geogFeat geogName graphic handDesc handNote head height heraldry hi history idno incipit institution item keywords l label layout layoutDesc lb lg licence list listBibl locus locusGrp material measure msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name note num objectDesc objectType orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote recordHist ref reg region relatedItem repository resp respStmt revisionDesc rubric scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seg series settlement sic signatures source sourceDesc sponsor stamp street subst summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surrogates taxonomy teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt typeDesc typeNote unclear watermark width zone] countermark	Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@source</p> <p>specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer</p>
Module	tei — Schema						
Members	att.global[TEI abbr accMat acquisition add addName additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am author authority availability bibl biblScope binding bindingDesc body catDesc catchwords category change choice cit citedRange classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr countermark country custEvent custodialHist damage date decoDesc decoNote del depth desc dim dimensions distributor district div edition editionStmt editor email encodingDesc ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric foliation foreign forename formula funder fw gap geo geogFeat geogName graphic handDesc handNote head height heraldry hi history idno incipit institution item keywords l label layout layoutDesc lb lg licence list listBibl locus locusGrp material measure msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name note num objectDesc objectType orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p pb persName physDesc placeName postCode principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote recordHist ref reg region relatedItem repository resp respStmt revisionDesc rubric scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seg series settlement sic signatures source sourceDesc sponsor stamp street subst summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surrogates taxonomy teiHeader term text textClass textLang title titleStmt typeDesc typeNote unclear watermark width zone] countermark						
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@source</p> <p>specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer</p>						

	<p>separated by whitespace</p> <p>Note The @source attribute points to an external source. When used on elements describing schema components such as <schemaSpec> or <moduleRef> it identifies the source from which declarations for the components of the object being defined may be obtained.</p> <p>On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.</p> <p>In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, or private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <prefixDef>.</p> <p>If more than one location is specified, the default assumption is that the required source should be obtained by combining the resources indicated.</p>
Example	<pre><p> <!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>) tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">'Collaboration' is a problematic and should be a contested term.</quote> <!-- ... --> </p></pre>
Example	<pre><p> <!-- ... --> <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we seem to know.</quote> <!-- ... --> </p> <!-- ... --> <bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed"> <title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>, <edition>15th edition</edition>. <pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>; <publisher>University of Chicago Press</publisher> (<date>2003</date>), <biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>. </bibl></pre>
Example	<pre><elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/></pre> <p>Include in the schema an element named <p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.</p>
Example	<pre><schemaSpec ident="myODD"</pre>

```

source="mycompiledODD.xml">
<!-- further declarations specifying the components required --&gt;
&lt;/schemaSpec&gt;
</pre>

```

Create a schema using components taken from the file **mycompiledODD.xml**.

2.3.29. att.handFeatures

att.handFeatures provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written.
[\[11.3.2.1. Document Hands\]](#)

Module	tei — Schema
Members	handNote scriptNote typeNote
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@scribe gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand. Statusoptional Datatype teidata.name</p> <p>@scribeRef points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <person> element elsewhere in the description. Statusoptional Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p> <p>@script characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example <i>secretary</i>, <i>copperplate</i>, <i>Chancery</i>, <i>Italian</i>, etc. Statusoptional Datatype occurrences of teidata.name separated by whitespace</p> <p>@scriptRef points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a <scriptNote> element elsewhere in the description. Statusoptional Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p> <p>@medium describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. <i>brown</i>, or other writing medium, e.g. <i>pencil</i> Statusoptional Datatype occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace</p> <p>@scope specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript. Statusoptional Datatype teidata.enumerated Legisole values only this hand is used throughout are: the manuscript major this hand is used through most of the manuscript</p>

	minor this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript
Note	Usually either @script or @scriptRef, and similarly, either @scribe or @scribeRef, will be supplied.

2.3.30. att.internetMedia

att.internetMedia provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	att.media[graphic] ref
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@MimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia mail extension (MIME) media type</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Data type one or more occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace</p>
Example	In this example @MimeType is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.
	<pre><ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8" target="http://sourceforge.net/p/tei/code/HEAD/tree/trunk/P5/Source/guiden.xml"/></pre>
Note	This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This type of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046 . The list of type maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The @MimeType attribute represents a value taken from this list.

2.3.31. att.measurement

att.measurement provides attributes to represent a regularized or normalized measurement.	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	measure
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@unit indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Data type teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Suggested values (metre) SI base unit of length</p> <p>includes: (kilogram) SI base unit of mass</p> <p>s</p>

Hz	(second) SI base unit of time
Pa	(hertz) SI unit of frequency
Pa	(pascal) SI unit of pressure or stress
Ω	(ohm) SI unit of electric resistance
L	(litre) 1 dm ³
t	(tonne) 10 ³ kg
ha	(hectare) 1 hm ²
Å	(ångström) 10 ⁻¹⁰ m
mL	(millilitre)
cm	(centimetre)
dB	(decibel) see remarks, below
kbit	(kilobit) 10 ³ or 1000 bits
Kibit	(kibibit) 2 ¹⁰ or 1024 bits
kB	(kilobyte) 10 ³ or 1000 bytes
KiB	(kibibyte) 2 ¹⁰ or 1024 bytes
MB	(megabyte) 10 ⁶ or 1 000 000 bytes
MiB	(mebibyte) 2 ²⁰ or 1 048 576 bytes

Note If the measurement being represented is not expressed in a particular unit, but rather is a number of discrete items, the unit count should be used, or the @unit attribute may be left unspecified. Wherever appropriate, a recognized SI unit name should be used (see further <http://www.bipm.org/en/publications/si-brochure/>; <http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/>). The list above is indicative rather than exhaustive.

@unitRef

points to a unique identifier stored in the @xml:id of a <unitDef> element that defines a unit of measure.

Status: optional

Data type: [data.pointer](#)

@quantity

specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement

Status: optional

Data type: [data.numeric](#)

	<p>@commodity</p> <p>indicates the substance that is being measured</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace</p> <p>NoteIn general, when the commodity is made of discrete entities, the plural form should be used, even when the measurement is of only one of them.</p>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="tei:*[@unitRef]"> <sch:report role="info" test="@unit">The @unit attribute may be unnecessary when @unitRef is present.</sch:report> </sch:rule></pre>
Note	<p>This attribute class provides a triplet of attributes that may be used either to regularize the values of the measurement being encoded, or to normalize them with respect to a standard measurement system.</p> <pre><1>So weren't you gonna buy <measure commodity="ice cream" quantity="0.5" unit="gal">half a gallon</measure>, baby</1> <1>So won't you go and buy <measure commodity="ice cream" quantity="1.893" unit="L">half a gallon</measure>, baby?</1></pre>
Note	<p>The unit should normally be named using the standard abbreviation for an SI unit (see further http://www.bipm.org/en/publications/si-brochure/; http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/). However, encoders may also specify measurements using informally defined units such as lines or characters.</p>

2.3.32. att.media

att.media provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	graphic
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.internetMedia (@MimeType)</p> <p>@width Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width Status Optional Datatype teidata.outputMeasurement</p> <p>@height Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height Status Optional Datatype teidata.outputMeasurement</p> <p>@scale Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size Status Optional</p>

Datatype

2.3.33. att.msClass

att.msClass provides an attribute to indicate text type or classification. [10.6. Intellectual Content
10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Members	msContents msItem msItemStruct
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@class identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this item by pointing to other elements or resources defining the classification concerned.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p>

2.3.34. att.msExcerpt

att.msExcerpt (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof. [10.6. Intellectual Content]

Module	msdescription — Schema
Members	colophon explicit finalRubric incipit msContents msItem msItemStruct quote rubric
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@defective indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete through loss or damage.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.xTruthValue</p>
Note	In the case of an incipit, indicates whether the incipit as given is defective, i.e. the first words of the text as preserved, as opposed to the first words of the work itself. In the case of an explicit, indicates whether the explicit as given is defective, i.e. the final words of the text as preserved, as opposed to what the closing words would have been had the text of the work been whole.

2.3.35. att.naming

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.5.1. Referring Strings 13.3.6. Names and Nyms]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	att.personal[addName forename name orgName persName placeName surname] author collection country district editor geogFeat geogName institution origPlace pubPlace region repository settlement
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref)</p> <p>@role may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for</p>

	<p>example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace</p>
@nymRef	<p>(reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (<i>nym</i>) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p> <p>Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.</p>

2.3.36. att.notated

att.notated provides an attribute to indicate any specialised notation used for element content.	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	formula quote seg
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@notation names the notation used for the content of the element.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p>

2.3.37. att.personal

att.personal (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]									
Module	tei — Schema								
Members	addName forename name orgName persName placeName surname								
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))</p> <p>@full indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Legales</p> <table> <tr> <td>values</td> <td>the name component is spelled out</td> </tr> <tr> <td>are:</td> <td>in full. [Default]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>abb</td> <td>(abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>init</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	values	the name component is spelled out	are:	in full. [Default]	abb	(abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.	init	
values	the name component is spelled out								
are:	in full. [Default]								
abb	(abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.								
init									

		(initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.
	@sort	specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name. Status optional Data type teidata.count

2.3.38. att.placement

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions 11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	add figure fw head label note
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@place specifies where this item is placed.</p> <p>Status recommended</p> <p>Data type occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace</p> <p>Suggested values</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> below below the line bottom at the foot of the page margin in the margin (left, right, or both) top at the top of the page opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page overleaf on the other side of the leaf above above the line end at the end of e.g. chapter or volume. inline within the body of the text. inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

```
<add place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add>
<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
```

```
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p. 7</note>
```

2.3.39. att.pointing

att.pointing provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	citedRange licence locus note ref term
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@targetLang specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by @target, using a 'language tag' generated according to BCP 47. Status optional Data type language Schematron</p> <pre><sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre> <p>linkGrp</p> <pre><linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp"> <ptr target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head" targetLang="pl" type="tuv" xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"/> <ptr target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head" targetLang="sw" type="tuv" xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"/> </linkGrp></pre> <p>In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines pointers at parallel fragments of the <i>Universal Declaration of Human Rights</i>: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.</p> <p>Note The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its @ident attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.</p> <p>@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References</p>

	<p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace</p> <p>Note One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI%20Consortium.</p>
@evaluate	<p>specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Datatype teidata.enumerated</p> <p>Legal all values are: one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer. one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer. none no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.</p> <p>Note If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.</p>

2.3.40. att.ranging

att.ranging provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	att.dimensions[att.damaged[damage] add date del depth dim dimensions ex gap geogFeat height origDate subst supplied unclear width] num
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@atLeast gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric</p> <p>@atMost gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement. Status Optional Datatype teidata.numeric</p> <p>@min where the measurement summarizes more than</p>

	<p>one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Data type <code>teidata.numeric</code></p> <p>@max</p> <p>where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Data type <code>teidata.numeric</code></p> <p>@confidence</p> <p>specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by @min and @max, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Data type <code>teidata.probability</code></p>
Example	<pre>The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <del rend="overstrike"> <gap atLeast="1" atMost="2" extent="one or two letters" reason="illegible" unit="chars"/> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.</pre>

2.3.41. att.resourced

att.resourced provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	<code>graphic</code>
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@url (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.</p> <p>Status required</p> <p>Data type <code>teidata.pointer</code></p>

2.3.42. att.segLike

att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	<code>seg</code>
Attributes	<p>Attributes <code>att.datcat</code> (@datcat, @valueDatcat) <code>att.fragmentable</code> (@part) characterizes the function of the segment.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>Data type <code>teidata.enumerated</code></p> <p>Note Attribute values will often vary depending</p>

on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization.

2.3.43. att.sortable

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	bibl idno item list listBibl msDesc term
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@sortKey</p> <p>supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Data typetext.word</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAMES"> <term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term> </index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first cousin.</p> </div>
	<p>Note The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produce the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent</p> <p>Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for 4-H will often appear alphabetized under 'fourth', and McCoy may be alphabetized under 'maccoy', while A1, A4, and A5 may all appear in numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a-' and 'AA'. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.</p>

2.3.44. att.spanning

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms

rather than by enclosing it. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions 1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	lb pb
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@spanTo</p> <p>indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Data typedata.pointer</p> <p>Schematron @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <pre><sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]"> <sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::*[@xml:id=substring(current() /@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated by @spanTo (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/> </sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre> </div>
Note	The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the @spanTo attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

2.3.45. att.timed

att.timed provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [8.3.5. Temporal Information]	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	gap
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@start</p> <p>indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Data typedata.pointer</p> <p>NoteIf no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierachic level.</p> <p>@end</p> <p>indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Data typedata.pointer</p>

Note If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierachic level.

2.3.46. att.transcriptional

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	add del subst
Attributes	<p>Attributes att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.written (@hand)</p> <p>@status indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.</p> <p>StatusOptional</p> <p>Data typedata.enumerated</p> <p>Sampleduplicate values all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact. include:</p> <p>duplicate-partial part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original</p> <p>excessStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.</p> <p>excessEnd some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.</p> <p>shortStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.</p> <p>shortEnd some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.</p> <p>partial some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.</p> <p>unremarkable the deletion is not faulty. [Default]</p> <p>Note Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.</p>

		Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.
	@cause	documents the presumed cause for the intervention. Status optional Data type data.enumerated
	@seq	(sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred. Status optional Data type data.count

2.3.47. att.translatable

att.translatable provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document.	
Module	tei — Schema
Members	desc
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@versionDate specifies the date on which the source text was extracted and sent to the translator Statusoptional Data typedata.temporal.w3c</p> <p>Note The @versionDate attribute can be used to determine whether a translation might need to be revisited, by comparing the modification date on the containing file with the @versionDate value on the translation. If the file has changed, changelogs can be checked to see whether the source text has been modified since the translation was made.</p>

2.3.48. att.typed

att.typed provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 17.1.1. Words and Above 3.5.1. Referring Strings 3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.5. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 16.1.1. Pointers and Links 16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 22.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 23.3.1.4. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]	
---	--

Module	tei — Schema
Members	TEI accMat add addName altIdentifier am change cit collection corr country custEvent damage date del dim district div explicit figure filiation finalRubric forename geogFeat geogName head incipit label lb lg listBibl locus msDesc

	<p>msFrag msName msPart note orgName origDate origPlace pb persName placeName provenance quote ref reg region relatedItem rubric seal seg settlement signatures stamp surface surfaceGrp surname term text zone</p>
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>datatype enumerated</p> <pre><div type="verse"> <head>Night in Tarras</head> <lg type="stanza"> <1>At evening tramping on the hot white road</1> <1>...</1> </lg> <lg type="stanza"> <1>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</1> <1>...</1> </lg> </div></pre> <p>Note The @type attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.</p> <p>@subtype provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed</p> <p>Status optional</p> <p>datatype enumerated</p> <p>Note The @subtype attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its @type attribute.</p>
Schematron	<pre><sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule></pre>
Note	<p>When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.4. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists.</p>

2.3.49. att.written

att.written provides an attribute to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in

the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

Module	tei — Schema
Members	att.damaged[damage] att.transcriptional[add del subst] div figure fw head hi label note p seg text zone
Attributes	<p>Attributes</p> <p>@hand points to a <code><handNote></code> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.</p> <p>Status Optional</p> <p>Data type <code>teidata.pointer</code></p>

2.4. Macros

2.4.1. macro.limitedContent

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	desc figDesc
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/> <classRef key="model.inter"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>macro.limitedContent = (text model.limitedPhrase model.inter</pre>

2.4.2. macro.paraContent

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	add corr damage del hi orig p ref reg seg sic supplied title unclear
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.inter"/></pre>

```

<classRef key="model.global"/>
<elementRef key="lg"/>
<classRef key="model.lLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>

```

Declaration

```

macro.paraContent =
(
    text
    model.gLike
    model.phrase
    model.inter
    model.global
    lg
    model.lLike
)*

```

2.4.3. macro.phraseSeq

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [[Standard Content Models](#)]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	abbr addName addrLine author biblScope catchwords citedRange colophon countermark distributor district edition editor email expan explicit extent finalRubric foreign forename fw geogFeat geogName heraldry incipit label material measure name num objectType orgNar origPlace persName placeName pubPlace publisher region rubric secFol settlement stamp surname term textLang watermark
Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.qLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content> </pre>
Declaration	<pre> macro.phraseSeq = (text model.gLike model.qLike model.phrase model.glob </pre>

2.4.4. macro.phraseSeq.limited

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those ph elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](#)]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	authority funder principal resp sponsor
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>macro.phraseSeq.limited = (text model.limitedPhrase model.gl</pre>

2.4.5. macro.specialPara

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	accMat acquisition additions change collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation handNote item layout licence musicNotation note origin provenance q quote scriptNote signatures source summary support surrogates typeNote
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.phrase"/> <classRef key="model.inter"/> <classRef key="model.divPart"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>macro.specialPara = (text model.gLike model.phrase model.inter model.divPart model.global)*</pre>

2.4.6. macro.xtext

macro.xtext (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	collection depth dim ex height institution repository width
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> </alternate> </content></pre>

2.5. Datatypes

2.5.1. teidata.certainty

teidata.certainty defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	teidata.probCert
Content model	<pre><content> <valList type="closed"> <valItem ident="high"/> <valItem ident="medium"/> <valItem ident="low"/> <valItem ident="unknown"/> </valList> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.certainty = "high" "medium" "low" "unknown"</pre>
Note	Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

2.5.2. teidata.count

teidata.count defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • collation/@mainStructures • handDesc/@hands • layout/@columns • layout/@streams • layout/@ruledLines • layout/@writtenLines • zone/@rotate
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger</pre>
Note	Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

2.5.3. teidata.duration.iso

teidata.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"}</pre>
Example	<pre><time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time></pre>
Example	<pre><date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date></pre>

Example	<pre><date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date></pre>
Example	<pre><time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time></pre>
Note	<p>A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.</p> <p>For complete details, see ISO 8601 <i>Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times</i>.</p>

2.5.4. teidata.duration.w3c

teidata.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="duration"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration</pre>
Example	<pre><time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time></pre>
Example	<pre><date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date></pre>
Example	<pre><date dur="P7D">a week</date></pre>
Example	<pre><time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time></pre>

Note	<p>A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.</p> <p>For complete details, see the W3C specification.</p>

2.5.5. teidata.enumerated

teidata.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • abbr/@type • bibl/@type • decoNote/@type • desc/@type • dimensions/@type • fw/@type • gap/@reason • gap/@agent • idno/@type • layout/@rulingMedium • list/@type • measure/@type • name/@type • num/@type • objectDesc/@form • q/@type • surface/@attachment • title/@type • title/@level • unclear/@reason • unclear/@agent
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef key="teidata.word" /> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.enumerated = teidata.word</pre>
Note	<p>Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.</p> <p>Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element.</p>

2.5.6. teidata.language

teidata.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>textLang/@mainLang</code> • <code>textLang/@otherLangs</code>
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <dataRef name="language"/> <valList> <valItem ident="" /> </valList> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.language = xsd:language ("")</pre>
Note	<p>The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.</p> <p>A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or <i>subtags</i> separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.</p> <p>language The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.</p> <p>script The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.</p> <p>region Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm.</p> <p>variant An IANA-registered variation. These codes are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not</p>

covered by other available subtags.

extension

An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.

private use

An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter *x* (i.e., starts with *x-*) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the [IANA registry](#) that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been 'grandfathered' from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with *x-*, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header.

Examples include

sn

Shona

zh-TW

Taiwanese

zh-Hant-HK

Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

en-SL

English as spoken in Sierra Leone

pl

Polish

es-MX

Spanish as spoken in Mexico

es-419

Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, [Language tags in HTML and XML](#).

2.5.7. teidata.name

teidata.name defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="Name"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.name = xsd:Name</pre>

Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.
-------------	--

2.5.8. teidata.numeric

teidata.numeric defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	Element: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• num/@value
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <dataRef name="double"/> <dataRef name="token" restriction="(\-?[\\d]+/\-?[\\d]+)"/> <dataRef name="decimal"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.numeric = xsd:double token { pattern = "(\-?[\\d]+/\-?[\\d]+)" } xsd:d</pre>
Note	<p>Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, ‘E notation’, a variant ‘exponential notation’, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.</p> <p>A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as the string 1/2.</p>

2.5.9. teidata.outputMeasurement

teidata.outputMeasurement defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is measured in centimeters (cm), millimeters (mm), inches (in), points (pt), picas (pc), pixels (px), ems (em), exs (ex), and gds (gd).	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(% cm mm in pt pc px em ex gd re)?"/> </content></pre>

Declaration	<pre>teidata.outputMeasurement = token { pattern = "[\u2010-]?\d+(\.\d+)?(% cm mm in pt pc px em ex gd </pre>
Example	<pre><figure> <head>The TEI Logo</head> <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <mentioned>TEI between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneat white background.</figDesc> <graphic height="600px" url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg" width="600px"/> </figure></pre>
Note	<p>These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft</p>

2.5.10. teidata.pattern

teidata.pattern defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="token"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.pattern = token</pre>
Note	<p>A regular expression, often called a <i>pattern</i>, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings <i>Handel</i>, <i>H\u00e4ndel</i>, and <i>Haendel</i> can be described by the pattern H(\u00e4 ae?)ndl (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern H(\u00e4 ae?)ndl <i>matches</i> each of the three strings)</p> <p>Wikipedia</p> <p>This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.</p>

2.5.11. teidata.point

teidata.point defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.point = token { pattern = "(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)"; type = xsd:decimal; };</pre>
Example	<pre><facsimile> <surface lrx="400" lry="280" ulx="0" uly="0"> <zone points="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234"> <graphic url="handwriting.png" /> </zone> </surface> </facsimile></pre>
Note	A point is defined by two numeric values, which should be expressed as decimal numbers end in a decimal point. E.g., both 0.0,84.2 and 0,84 are allowed, but 0.,84. is not.

2.5.12. teidata.pointer

teidata.pointer defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • change/@target • include/@href • keywords/@scheme • locus/@scheme • locusGrp/@scheme • note/@targetEnd • relatedItem/@target
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="anyURI" /> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI</pre>

Note	The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax . Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 Internationalized Resource Identifiers (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/ is encoded as https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25 while http://موقع.وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر/ is encoded as http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/
-------------	--

2.5.13. teidata.probCert

teidata.probCert defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/> <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.probCert = teidata.probability teidata.certainty</pre>

2.5.14. teidata.probability

teidata.probability defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	teidata.probCert
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="double"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.probability = xsd:double</pre>
Note	Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing <i>certainly false</i> and 1 representing <i>certainly true</i> .

2.5.15. teidata.replacement

teidata.replacement defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <textNode/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.replacement = text</pre>

2.5.16. teidata.temporal.iso

teidata.temporal.iso defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <dataRef name="date"/> <dataRef name="gYear"/> <dataRef name="gMonth"/> <dataRef name="gDay"/> <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/> <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/> <dataRef name="time"/> <dataRef name="dateTime"/> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.temporal.iso = xsd:date xsd:gYear xsd:gMonth xsd:gDay xsd:gYearMonth xsd:gMonthDay xsd:time xsd:dateTime token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"} </pre>
Note	If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone

indicator should always be included, and only the `dateTime` representation should be used.

For all representations for which ISO 8601 describes both a *basic* and an *extended* format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format.

While ISO 8601 permits the use of both `00:00` and `24:00` to represent midnight, these Guidelines strongly recommend against the use of `24:00`.

2.5.17. teidata.temporal.w3c

teidata.temporal.w3c defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the *W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <alternate> <dataRef name="date"/> <dataRef name="gYear"/> <dataRef name="gMonth"/> <dataRef name="gDay"/> <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/> <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/> <dataRef name="time"/> <dataRef name="dateTime"/> </alternate> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.temporal.w3c = xsd:date xsd:gYear xsd:gMonth xsd:gDay xsd:gYearMonth xsd:gMonthDay xsd:time xsd:dateTime</pre>
Note	If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the <code>dateTime</code> representation should be used.

2.5.18. teidata.text

teidata.text defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	Element: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• include/@xpointer• include/@encoding

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • include/@accept • include/@accept-charset • include/@accept-language
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="string"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.text = string</pre>
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘token’ in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

2.5.19. teidata.truthValue

teidata.truthValue defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • note/@anchored • surface/@flipping
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="boolean"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean</pre>
Note	<p>The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.</p> <p>This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: data.xTruthValue.</p>

2.5.20. teidata.version

teidata.version defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.	
Module	tei — Schema
Used by	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TEI/@version

Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }</pre>
Note	<p>The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (http://unicode.org/versions/). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.</p>

2.5.21. teidata.versionNumber

teidata.versionNumber defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	
Content model	<pre><content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}"/> </content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.versionNumber = token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }</pre>

2.5.22. teidata.word

teidata.word defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	<p>teidata.enumeratedElement:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • availability/@status • locus/@from • locus/@to • supplied/@reason • supportDesc/@material
Content model	

```

<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+"/>
</content>

```

Declaration	<pre>teidata.word = token { pattern = "(\p{L} \p{N} \p{P} \p{S})+" }</pre>
Note	Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

2.5.23. teidata.xTruthValue

teidata.xTruthValue (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	<p>Element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • binding@contemporary • seal@contemporary
Content model	<pre> <content> <alternate> <dataRef name="boolean"/> <valList> <valItem ident="unknown"/> <valItem ident="inapplicable"/> </valList> </alternate> </content> </pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean ("unknown" "inapplicable")</pre>
Note	In cases where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype data.TruthValue .

2.5.24. teidata.xpath

teidata.xpath defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.

Module	tei — Schema
Used by	
Content model	<pre> <content> <textNode/> </pre>

	<pre></content></pre>
Declaration	<pre>teidata.xpath = text</pre>
Note	<p>Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in [[undefined XSLT2]]. When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP.</p>

[Home](#)

Date: 2019-08-22
